# International Macroeconomics ${ }^{1}$ 

Stephanie Schmitt-Grohé ${ }^{2}$ Martín Uribe ${ }^{3}$

This draft: Spring 2009

[^0]
## Contents

1 The Balance of Payments ..... 1
1.1 Balance-of-Payments Accounting ..... 1
1.2 The Net International Investment Position ..... 8
1.2.1 Valuation Changes and the Net International Invest- ment Position ..... 9
1.3 Net Foreign Asset Position and Expected Future Trade and Current Account Balances ..... 12
1.3.1 Can a Country Run a Perpetual Trade Balance deficit? ..... 12
1.3.2 Can a Country Run a Perpetual Current Account Deficit?14
1.4 Saving, Investment, and the Current Account ..... 15
1.5 Appendix: Perpetual Trade-Balance and Current-Account Deficits in Infinite-Horizon Economies ..... 17
2 A Theory of Current Account Determination ..... 21
2.1 A Two-Period Economy ..... 21
2.1.1 Equilibrium ..... 26
2.2 Capital controls ..... 29
2.3 Current account adjustment to output, terms of trade, and world interest rate shocks ..... 30
2.3.1 Temporary Output Shocks ..... 30
2.3.2 Permanent Output Shocks ..... 33
2.3.3 Terms-of-Trade Shocks ..... 34
2.3.4 World Interest Rate Shocks ..... 35
2.4 An algebraic example ..... 36
2.5 The Great Moderation and the U.S. Trade Balance ..... 39
2.5.1 Uncertainty and the Trade Balance ..... 41
3 Current Account Determination in a Production Economy ..... 45
3.1 A production economy ..... 45
3.1.1 Firms ..... 45
3.1.2 Households ..... 49
3.1.3 Equilibrium in a closed economy ..... 50
3.1.4 Equilibrium in an open economy ..... 55
3.2 Current account adjustment to output and world-interest-rate shocks ..... 58
3.2.1 A temporary output shock ..... 58
3.2.2 A world-interest-rate shock ..... 60
4 External Adjustment in Small and Large Economies ..... 63
4.1 An investment surge ..... 66
4.2 Country risk premium ..... 68
4.3 Large open economy ..... 69
5 Fiscal Deficits and the Current Account ..... 71
5.1 The Twin Deficits of the 1980s ..... 71
5.2 Explanations of the current account deficits of the 1980s ..... 71
5.3 The government sector in the open economy ..... 76
5.4 Ricardian Equivalence ..... 79
5.5 Then what was it? ..... 81
5.5.1 Failure of Ricardian Equivalence ..... 83
5.5.2 Borrowing Constraints ..... 83
5.5.3 Intergenerational Effects ..... 85
5.5.4 Distortionary Taxation ..... 85
6 International Capital Market Integration ..... 87
6.1 Measuring the degree of capital mobility: (I) Saving-Investment correlations ..... 88
6.2 Measuring capital mobility: (II) Interest rate differentials ..... 93
6.2.1 Covered interest rate parity ..... 94
6.2.2 Real interest rate differentials and capital market in- tegration ..... 98
6.2.3 Exchange Risk Premium $\left(f-s^{e}\right)$ ..... 101
6.2.4 Expected Real Depreciation, $s^{e}-s+\pi^{* e}-\pi^{e}$ ..... 102
7 Determinants of the Real Exchange Rate ..... 105
7.1 Productivity Differentials and Real Exchange Rates: The Balassa-Samuelson Model ..... 110
7.1.1 Application: The Real Exchange Rate and Labor Pro- ductivity: 1970-1993 ..... 114
7.1.2 Application: Deviations from PPP observed between rich and poor countries ..... 116
7.2 Trade Barriers and Real Exchange Rates ..... 117
8 Changes in Aggregate Spending and the Real Exchange Rate: The TNT Model ..... 119
8.1 The production possibility frontier ..... 120
8.2 The income expansion path ..... 123
8.3 Partial equilibrium ..... 127
8.4 General equilibrium ..... 131
8.5 Wealth shocks and the real exchange rate ..... 135
8.6 World interest rate shocks ..... 137
8.7 Terms-of-trade shocks ..... 138
9 The Macroeconomics of External Debt ..... 141
9.1 The debt crisis of developing countries of the 1980s ..... 141
9.2 The resurgence of capital inflows to developing countries in the 1990s ..... 146
9.3 The Debt Burden ..... 147
9.4 Debt Reduction Schemes ..... 151
9.4.1 Unilateral Debt Forgiveness ..... 151
9.4.2 Debt Overhang ..... 152
9.4.3 The Free Rider Problem In Debt Forgiveness ..... 154
9.4.4 Third-party debt buy-backs ..... 155
9.4.5 Debt swaps ..... 156
10 Monetary Policy and Nominal Exchange Rate Determina- tion ..... 157
10.1 The quantity theory of money ..... 158
10.1.1 Floating (or Flexible) Exchange Rate Regime ..... 159
10.1.2 Fixed Exchange Rate Regime ..... 160
10.2 Fiscal deficits and the exchange rate ..... 160
10.2.1 Money demand ..... 161
10.2.2 Purchasing power parity (PPP) ..... 161
10.2.3 The interest parity condition ..... 162
10.2.4 The government budget constraint ..... 163
10.2.5 A fixed exchange rate regime ..... 164
10.2.6 Equilibrium under a floating exchange rate regime ..... 166
10.3 Balance-of-payments crises . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 174
10.4 Appendix: A dynamic optimizing model of the demand for money . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 180

## Chapter 1

## The Balance of Payments

### 1.1 Balance-of-Payments Accounting

A country's international transactions are recorded in the balance-of-payments accounts. In the United States, the balance-of-payments accounts are compiled by the Bureau of Economic Analysis (BEA), which belongs to the U.S. Department of Commerce. Up-to-date balance of payments data can be found on the BEA's website at http://www.bea.gov.

A country's balance of payments has three components: the current account, the financial account, and the capital account. The current account records exports and imports of goods and services and international receipts or payments of income. Exports and income receipts enter with a plus and imports and income payments enter with a minus. For example, if a U.S. resident buys a SONY MP3 player from Japan for $\$ 50$, then the U.S. current account goes down by $\$ 50$. This is because this transaction represents an import of goods worth $\$ 50$.

The financial account keeps record of sales of assets to foreigners and purchases of assets located abroad. Thus, the financial account measures changes in a country's net foreign asset position. Sales of assets to foreigners are given a positive sign and purchases of assets located abroad a negative sign. For example, in the case of the import of the MP3 player, if the U.S. resident pays with U.S. currency, then a Japanese resident (SONY) is buying U.S. assets (currency) for $\$ 50$, so the U.S. financial account receives a positive entry of $\$ 50$.

The capital account records capital transfers. The major types of capital transfers are debt forgiveness and migrants' transfers (goods and financial assets accompanying migrants as they leave or enter the country).

Though conceptually important, capital-account transactions are believed to be generally small in the U.S. accounts. However, they are important to other countries. For instance, in July 2007 the U.S. Treasury Department announced that the United States, Germany, and Russia will provide debt relief for Afganistan for more than 11 billion dollars. This is a significant amount for the balance of payments accounts of Afganistan, representing about 99 percent of their foreign debt obligations. But the amount involved in this debt relief operation is a small figure for the balance of payments of the three donor countries. This debt relief will enter the U.S. capital account with a minus and the U.S. financial account with a plus. Consider another example that would also entail a movement in the capital account. If someone immigrates to the United States his assets abroad now become part of the U.S. net foreign asset position, entering the capital account with a plus and the financial account with a minus.

The MP3-player, the debt-relief, and the immigration examples given above illustrate a fundamental principle of balance-of-payments accounting known as double-entry bookkeeping. Each transaction enters the balance of payments twice, once with a positive sign and once with a negative sign. To illustrate this principle with another example, suppose that an Italian friend of yours comes to visit you in New York and stays at the Lucerne Hotel. He pays $\$ 400$ for his lodging with his Italian VISA card. In this case, the U.S. is exporting a service (hotel accommodation), so the current account increases by $\$ 400$. At the same time, the Lucerne Hotel purchases a financial asset worth $\$ 400$ (the promise of VISA-Italy to pay $\$ 400$ ), which decreases the U.S. financial account by $\$ 400 .{ }^{1}$

The detailed decomposition of the balance-of-payments accounts is as follows:

1. Current Account: It measures a country's net exports (i.e., the difference between exports and imports) of goods and services and net international income receipts.
(a) Trade Balance (or Balance on Goods and Services): It represents the difference between exports and imports of goods and services.
i. Merchandise Trade Balance (or Balance on Goods): It equals exports minus imports of goods.
ii. Services Balance: Includes net receipts from items such as transportation, travel expenditures, and legal assistance.
[^1]
## (b) Income Balance:

i. Net investment income: it is the difference between income receipts on U.S.-owned assets abroad and income payments on foreign-owned assets in the United States. It includes international interest and dividend payments and earnings of domestically owned firms operating abroad.
ii. Net international compensation to employees
(c) Net Unilateral Transfers: It is the difference between gifts (that is, payments that do not correspond to purchases of any good, service, or asset) received from the rest of the world and gifts made by the U.S. to foreign countries. Over the past decade private remittances have become the major component of Net Unilateral Transfers. For example, payments by a Mexican citizen residing in the United States to relatives in Mexico would enter with a minus in the current account as they represent a gift of someone residing in the U.S. to someone residing abroad.
2. Financial Account: Difference between sales of assets to foreigners and purchases of assets held abroad.
(a) U.S.-owned assets abroad consist of:
i. U.S. official reserve assets such as special drawing rights (SDRs), foreign currencies, reserve position in the IMF
ii. U.S. government assets, other than offical reserve assets
iii. U.S. private assets, such as direct investment and foreign securities.
(b) Foreign-owned assets held in the United States consist of:
i. Foreign official assets in the United States such as U.S. government securities or U.S. currency held by a foreign central bank.
ii. Other foreign-owned assets in the United States such as U.S. government securities or U.S. currency held by a foreign private firm.
3. Capital Account: Records capital transfers that result in a change in the stock of assets of an economy.

The components of the balance-of-payments accounts are linked by the
following accounting identities:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\text { Trade Balance } & =\text { Merchandise Trade Balance } \\
& + \text { Services Balance } \\
\text { Current Account Balance } & =\text { Trade Balance } \\
& + \text { Income Balance } \\
& + \text { Net Unilateral Transfers }
\end{aligned}
$$

The sum of a country's net exports of goods and services, net international income receipts, and net unilateral transfers must necessarily be reflected in an equivalent change in its net foreign asset position. That is, the current account equals the difference between a country's purchases of assets from foreigners and its sales of assets to them, which is the sum of the financial and the capital accounts preceeded by a minus sign. This relationship is known as the fundamental balance-of-payments identity:

Current Account Balance $=-($ Financial Account Balance + Capital Account Balance $)$
Table 1.1 displays the U.S. balance-of-payments accounts for 2007. In that year, the United States experienced a large deficit in both the current account and the trade balance account of more than 5 percent of GDP. Current-account and trade-balance deficits are frequently observed. In fact, the U.S. trade and current account balances have been in deficit for more than 25 years. The difference between the current account and the trade balance in 2007 is is small, because a positive income balance is offset by a negative and slightly larger balance on unilateral transfrs. Typically, the United States makes more gifts to other nations than it receives. About one third of these gifts are remittances of foreign workers residing in the U.S. to relatives in their countries of origin. In 2007, private remittances were about $\$ 36$ billion. For some countries, net receipts of remittances can represent a substantial source of foreign income. For example, in 2004 Mexico received about 2.5 percent of GDP in net remittances. This source of income was responsible for the fact that in that year Mexico's current account deficit was smaller than its trade deficit, despite the fact that Mexico, being a net debtor to the rest of the world, had to make large international interest payments. Net unilateral transfers have been negative ever since the end of World War II, with one exception. In 1991, net unilateral transfers were positive because of the payments the U.S. received from its allies in compensation for the expenses incurred during the Gulf war.

Table 1.1: U.S. Balance-of-Payments Accounts, 2007.

| Item | Billions <br> of dollars | Percentage <br> of GDP |
| :--- | ---: | ---: |
| Current Account | -731.2 | -5.3 |
| Trade Balance | -700.3 | -5.1 |
| Merchandise Trade Balance | -819.4 | -5.9 |
| Services Balance | 119.1 | 0.9 |
| Income Balance | 81.7 | 0.6 |
| Net Investment Income | 88.8 | 0.6 |
| Net International Compensation to Employees | -7.0 | -0.1 |
| Net Unilateral Transfers | -112.7 | -0.8 |
| Private Remittances and Other Transfers | -72.1 | -0.5 |
| U.S. Government Transfers | -40.6 | -0.3 |

Source: Bureau of Economic Analysis, U.S. Department of Commerce, http://www.bea.gov. December 2008 data release.

In 2007 the United States was a net importer of goods, with a merchandise trade deficit of $5.9 \%$ of GDP and at the same time a net exporter of services, with a service balance surplus of $0.9 \%$ of GDP. The U.S. has a comparative advantage in the production of human-capital-intensive services, such as professional consulting, higher education, research and development, and health care. At the same time, the U.S. imports basic goods, such as primary commodities, textiles, and consumer durables.

The balance on the current account may be larger or smaller than the balance on the trade account. Also, both the trade balance and the current account may be positive or negative and they need not have the same sign. Table 1.2 and figure 1.1 illustrate this point. They display the trade balance and the current account balance as percentages of GDP in 2005 ( $T B / G D P$ and $C A / G D P$, respectively) for a selected number of countries.

Argentina is an example of a country that in 2005 ran trade-balance and current-account surpluses, with the trade-balance surplus exceeding the balance on the current-account. The large trade balance surplus in Argentina is driven by large agricultural exports, propelled by the surge in soy bean prices and a weak peso since 2002. The current account surplus is smaller than the trade balance surplus because of interest payments on the external debt. Historically, Argentina's foreign interest obligations have been larger than

Figure 1.1: Trade Balances and Current Account Balances Across Countries in 2005


Source: EconStat. Note: TB denotes the trade balance in goods and services and CA denotes the current account balance. The countries included in the sample are: Argentina, Australia, Austria, Belarus, Belgium, Bolivia, Brazil, Canada, Chile, China, Colombia, CzechRepublic, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, HongKong, Indonesia, Ireland, Italy, Japan, Korea, Mexico, Philippines, Russia, Spain, Sweden, Turkey, UK, Ukraine, and the United States

Table 1.2: Trade Balance and Current Account as Percentages of GDP in 2005 for Selected Countries

| Country | TB/GDP | CA/GDP |
| :--- | ---: | ---: |
| Argentina | 6.8 | 3.1 |
| China | 5.5 | 7.1 |
| Ireland | 11.8 | -2.0 |
| Mexico | -1.7 | -0.6 |
| Philippines | -8.9 | 2.3 |
| United States | -5.7 | -6.2 |

Source: IMF International Financial Statistics and Word Economic Outlook. Available online at http://www.imf.org.
the trade balance resulting in negative current account balances. However, in 2001, Argentina defaulted on much of its external debt thereby reducing its net interest payments abroad.

Like Argentina, China displays both a current-account and a tradebalance surplus. However, unlike Argentina, the Chinese current-account surplus is larger than its trade-balance surplus. This difference can be explain by the fact that China, unlike Argentina, is a net creditor to the rest of the world, and thus receives positive net investment income.

The Philippines provides an example of a country with a current account surplus in spite of a sizable trade-balance deficit of 9 percent of GDP. The positive current account balance is the consequence of large remittances made by overseas Filipino workers of more than 10 percent of GDP.

Mexico, the United States and Ireland all experienced current-account deficits in 2005. In the case of Mexico and the United States, the currentaccount deficits were financing trade deficits of about equal sizes. In the case of Mexico, the current-account deficit was slightly smaller than the trade deficit because of remittances sent by Mexicans working mainly in the United States. These very same remittances explain to some extent why the United States current account deficit exceeded its trade deficit. Finally, the current-account deficit in Ireland was accompanied by a large trade surplus of about 12 percent of GDP. In the 1980s, Ireland embarked on a remarkable growth path that earned it the nick name 'Celtic Tiger.' This growth experience was financed largely through external debt. By the end of the 1980s, the net international investment position of Ireland was -70
percent of GDP. The positive trade balance surplus of 2005 reflects mainly Ireland's effort to service its external obligations.

It is evident from figure 1.1 that most (TB/GDP, CA/GDP) pairs fall within a narrow corridor around the 45 -degree line. That is, for many countries the trade balance and the current account are of the same sign and of roughly the same magnitude. This clustering around the 45-degree line suggests that for many countries the trade balance is the main component of the current account.

### 1.2 The Net International Investment Position

One reason why the concept of Current Account Balance is economically important is that it reflects a country's net borrowing needs. For example, the fact that in 2007 the United States run a current account deficit of about 700 billion dollars means that some other country must lend this amount to the United States. In this way, the current account is related to changes in a country's net international investment position. Net international investment position (NIIP) is a technical term to refer to a country's net foreign wealth, that is, the difference between foreign assets owned by U.S. residents and U.S. assets owned by foreigners. The net international investment position is a stock while the current account (CA) is a flow. In the absence of valuation changes, the level of the current account must equal the change in the net international investment position. That is, in the absence of valuation changes, we have that $C A=\Delta N I I P$. Shortly, we will discuss how this equality is affected when the assets included in the country's international investment position change value from one year to the next.

Figure 1.2 shows the U.S. current account balance since 1976 along with a measure of the nation's net international investment position. The United States had accumulated substantial foreign wealth by the early 1980s when a string of current account deficits of proportions unprecedented in the twentieth century opened up. In 1987, the nation became a net debtor to foreigners for the first time since World War I. The U.S. current account deficits did not stop in the 1990s. On the contrary, by the end of that decade, the United States had become the world's biggest foreign debtor. Current account deficits continued at an accelerated pace in the fist years of the new millenium. By the end of 2007, the net foreign asset position of the United States stood at -2.4 trillion dollars or about 20 percent of GDP. This is a really big number, and many economist wonder whether the observed downward trend in the net foreign investment position is sustainable over

Figure 1.2: The U.S. Current Account (CA) and Net International Investment Position (NIIP) at market value


Source: http://www.bea.gov
time. This concern stems from the fact that countries that accumulated large external debt to GDP ratios in the past, such as many Latin American countries in the 1980s, Mexico, Russian, and several Southeast Asian countries in the second half of the 1990s, and Argentina in 2001, have experienced sudden reversals in international capital flows that were followed by costly financial and economic crises. Indeed the 2008 financial meltdown in the United States, featuring a large share of the financial sector in state of insolvency and kept alive only by actual or expected government intervention, has brought this issue to the fore.

### 1.2.1 Valuation Changes and the Net International Investment Position

We saw earlier that the current account balance measures the flow of net new claims on foreign wealth that a country acquires from net exports of goods and services and from net income generated abroad. This flow is not,
however, the only factor causing a country's net foreign wealth to change. Take another look at figure 1.2. Between 2002 and 2007 the U.S. net international investment position declined by much less than the cumulative sum of its current account deficits. The cumulative sum of its current account deficits was $\$ 3,400$ billion, whereas the change in its net international investment position was only $\$ 400$ billion. So there is a huge discrepancy of about $\$ 3,000$ billion between the accumulated current account balances and the change in the NIIP at market value. This discrepancy is due to changes in the market value of U.S.-owned foreign assets and foreign-owned U.S. assets. The enormous valuation change in favor of the United States represents about one fourth of an annual GDP. Without this lucky strike, the U.S. net foreign asset position in 2007 would have been an external debt of about 45 percent of one annual GDP instead of the actual 20 percent. Figure 1.3 plots the NIIP and the hypothetical NIIP that would have occurred if no valuation changes had taken place since 1976 (NIIP-NVC). The hypothetical NIIP with no valuation changes (NIIP-NVC) is computed as the sum of the NIIP for 1976 and the cumulative sum of current account balances since 1977. It is clear from the graph that valuation changes became a predominant determinant of the NIIP since around the year 2000.

What caused the enormous change in the value of assets in favor of the United States over the period 2002 and 2007? Milesi-Ferretti, of the International Monetary Fund, decomposes this valuation change. ${ }^{2}$ During the period 2002-2007, U.S.-owned assets abroad, mostly denominated in foreign currency, increased in value by much more than foreign-owned U.S. assets, mostly denominated in U.S. dollars. The factors behind these asymmetric changes in value are twofold: First, the U.S. dollar depreciated relative to other currencies by about 20 percent in real terms. A depreciation of the U.S. dollar increases the value of foreign-currency denominated U.S.-owned assets, while leaving unchanged the value of dollar-denominated foreign-owned assets, thereby strengthening the U.S. NIIP. Second, the stock markets in foreign countries significantly outperformed the U.S. stock market. Specifically, Milesi-Ferretti finds that a dollar invested in foreign stock markets in 2002 returned 2.90 dollars by the end of 2007. By contrast, a dollar invested in the U.S. market in 2002, yielded only 1.90 dollars at the end of 2007. These gains in foreign equity resulted in an increase in the net equity position of the U.S. from an insignificant level in 2002 of below $\$ 40$ billion to $\$ 3,000$ billion by 2007 .

[^2]Figure 1.3: The U.S. NIIP and the Hypothetical NIIP with No Valuation Changes Since 1976


Note: the actual NIIP data are from the Bureau of Economic Analysis. The hypothetical NIIP with no valuation changes (NIIP-NVC) is computed as the sum of the NIIP for 1976 and the cumulative sum of current account balances since 1977.

These enormous valuations changes, which allowed the United States to run unprecedented current account deficits without a concomitant deterioration of its net international asset position, came to a abrupt end in 2008. In that year, stock markets around the world plummeted. Because the net equity position of the U.S. was so large at the beginning of 2008 , the decline in stock prices in the U.S. and elsewhere inflicted large losses on the value of the U.S. equity portfolio. Preliminary estimates as of January 2009 indicate portfolio losses of about $\$ 1,300$ billion or 10 percent of GDP.

If all of the valuation gains accrued to the U.S. over the past five years were to reverse themselves in the near future, we should expect a further deterioration in the U.S. NIIP of about 15 percent of GDP. Such a development would almost certainly lead to a trade balance reversal.

### 1.3 Net Foreign Asset Position and Expected Future Trade and Current Account Balances

A natural question that arises from our description of the recent history of U.S. external accounts is whether the observed trade balance and current account deficits are sustainable in the long run. In this section, we develop a simple framework to address this question.

### 1.3.1 Can a Country Run a Perpetual Trade Balance deficit?

The answer to this question depends on the sign of a country's net international investment position. A negative net international investment position means that the country as a whole is a debtor to the rest of the world. Thus, the country must generate trade balance surpluses in the future in order to service its foreign debt. Similarly, a positive net international investment position means that the country is a net creditor to the rest of the world. The country can therefore afford to run future trade balance deficits.

Let's analyze this idea more formally. Consider an economy that lasts for only two periods, period 1 and period 2 . Let $T B_{1}$ denote the trade balance in period 1, $C A_{1}$ the current account balance in period 1, and $B_{1}^{*}$ the country's net international investment position (or net foreign asset position) at the end of period 1. For example, if the country in question was the United States and period 1 was meant to be 2005, then $C A_{1}=-791.5$ billion, $T B_{1}=-716.7$, and $B_{1}^{*}=-2,546.2$ billion. Net investment income in period 1 is equal to the return on net foreign assets held by the country's residents between periods 0 and 1 . Let $r$ denote the interest rate paid on investments held for one period and $B_{0}^{*}$ denote the net foreign asset position at the end of period 0 . Then

$$
\text { Net investment income in period } 1=r B_{0}^{*}
$$

In what follows, we ignore net international compensation to employees and net unilateral transfers by assuming that they are always equal to zero. Then the current account equals the sum of net investment income and the trade balance, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
C A_{1}=r B_{0}^{*}+T B_{1} . \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

The current account, in turn, represents the amount by which the country's net foreign asset position changes in period 1 , that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
C A_{1}=B_{1}^{*}-B_{0}^{*} . \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Combining equations (1.1) and (1.2) to eliminate $C A_{1}$ yields:

$$
B_{1}^{*}=(1+r) B_{0}^{*}+T B_{1}
$$

A relation similar to this one must also hold in period 2. So we have that

$$
B_{2}^{*}=(1+r) B_{1}^{*}+T B_{2}
$$

Combining the last two equations to eliminate $B_{1}^{*}$ we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
(1+r) B_{0}^{*}=\frac{B_{2}^{*}}{(1+r)}-T B_{1}-\frac{T B_{2}}{(1+r)} \tag{1.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now consider the possible values that the net foreign asset position at the end of period $2, B_{2}^{*}$, can take. If $B_{2}^{*}$ is negative $\left(B_{2}^{*}<0\right)$, it means that in period 2 the country is acquiring debt to be paid off in period 3 . However, in period 3 nobody will be around to collect the debt because the world ends in period 2. Thus, the rest of the world will not be willing to lend to our country in period 2. This means that $B_{2}^{*}$ cannot be negative, or $B_{2}^{*} \geq 0$. This restriction is known as the no-Ponzi-game condition. ${ }^{3}$ Can $B_{2}^{*}$ be strictly positive? The answer is no. A positive value of $B_{2}^{*}$ means that the country is lending to the rest of the world in period 2 . But clearly the country will be unable to collect this debt in period 3 because, again, the world ends in period 2. Thus, the country will never choose to hold a positive net foreign asset position at the end of period 2. If $B_{2}^{*}$ can be neither positive nor negative, it must be equal to zero:

$$
B_{2}^{*}=0 .
$$

This condition is referred to as the transversality condition. Using this expression, (1.3) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
(1+r) B_{0}^{*}=-T B_{1}-\frac{T B_{2}}{(1+r)} . \tag{1.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

This equation states that a country's initial net foreign asset position must equal the present discounted value of its future trade deficits. Our claim that a negative initial net foreign wealth position implies that the country

[^3]must generate trade balance surpluses in the future can be easily verified using equation (1.4). Suppose that the country is a net debtor to the rest of the world $\left(B_{0}^{*}<0\right)$. Clearly, if it never runs a trade balance surplus ( $T B_{1} \leq 0$ and $T B_{2} \leq 0$ ), then the left-hand side of (1.4) is negative while the right-hand side is positive, so (1.4) would be violated.

Thus, the answer to the question of whether a country can run a perpetual trade balance deficit is yes, provided the country's initial net foreign asset position is positive. Because the U.S. is currently a net foreign debtor to the rest of the world, it follows that it will have to run trade balance surpluses at some point in the future. This result extends to economies that las t for any number of periods, not just two. Indeed, the appendix shows that the result holds for economies that last forever (infinite-horizon economies).

### 1.3.2 Can a Country Run a Perpetual Current Account Deficit?

In a finite-horizon economy like the two-period world we are studying, the answer to this question is, again, yes, provided the country's initial net foreign asset position is positive. To see why, note that an expression similar to (1.2) must also hold in period 2 , that is,

$$
B_{2}^{*}-B_{1}^{*}=C A_{2} .
$$

Combining this expression with equation (1.2) to eliminate $B_{1}^{*}$, we obtain

$$
B_{0}^{*}=-C A_{1}-C A_{2}+B_{2}^{*}
$$

Imposing the transversality condition $B_{2}^{*}=0$, it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{0}^{*}=-C A_{1}-C A_{2} . \tag{1.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

This equation says that a country's initial net foreign asset position must be equal to the sum of its current account deficits. Suppose the country's initial net foreign asset position is negative, that is, $B_{0}^{*}<0$. Then for this country to satisfy its intertemporal budget constraint (equation (1.5)) the sum of its current account surpluses must be positive ( $C A_{1}+C A_{2}>0$ ), that is, the country must run a current account surplus in at least one period.

This result is valid for any finite horizon. However, the appendix shows that in an infinite horizon economy, a negative initial net foreign asset position does not preclude an economy from running perpetual current account deficits. What is needed for the country not to engage in a Ponzi scheme is that it pays periodically part of the interest accrued on its net foreign debt to ensure that the foreign debt grows at a rate less than the interest rate.

Because in this situation the country's net foreign debt is growing over time, the economy must devote an ever larger amount of resources (i.e., it must generate larger and larger trade surpluses) to servicing part of its interest obligations with the rest of the world. The need to run increasing trade surpluses over time requires domestic output to also grow over time. For if output did not grow, the required trade balance surpluses would exceed GDP, which is impossible.

### 1.4 Saving, Investment, and the Current Account

As documented by figure 1.2 , since the early 1980s the U.S. current account has displayed large deficits, exceeding 5 percent of GDP since 2004. This development has received a lot of attention in the press and by professional and academic economists. Often, explanations of the phenomenon are based on one of the following "alternative theories" of current account determination: (1) Large current account deficits originate from too much borrowing by U.S. residents from the rest of the world. (2) The current account deficits are caused by large trade imbalances: Americans are importing too much and exporting too little. (3) The U.S. is running current account deficits because people are not saving as much as they used to. Alternatively, a more optimistic interpretation of the matter is that, in fact, current account deficits are a good thing because they are due not to insufficient savings, but rather caused by high levels of domestic investment. (4) The root of the problem lies in the fact that the country is living beyond its means; domestic absorption exceeds national income. At first glance, these four statements seem like different explanations of the same phenomenon. However, they represent neither "theories" of current account deficits nor are distinct. They simply represent accounting identities all of which must be satisfied at all times in any economy.

A basic concept that we introduced in earlier in this chapter is that the current account measures the change in the net foreign asset position of a country:

$$
C A_{t}=B_{t}^{*}-B_{t-1}^{*},
$$

where $C A_{t}$ denotes the country's current account in period $t$ and $B_{t}^{*}$ the country's net foreign asset holdings at the end of period $t$.

Another basic relationship derived above links the current account to the trade balance and net investment income (again, we are ignoring net international cmpensation to employees and net unilateral transfers):

$$
\begin{equation*}
C A_{t}=T B_{t}+r B_{t-1}^{*}, \tag{1.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $T B_{t}$ denotes the trade balance in period $t$ and $r$ denotes the interest rate.

The trade balance measures the difference between a country's exports and imports of goods and non-financial services. That is, letting $X_{t}$ stand for exports in period $t$ and $I M_{t}$ for imports in period $t$, the trade balance is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
T B_{t}=X_{t}-I M_{t} . \tag{1.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

The difference between the amount of goods and services a country produces domestically and the amount of goods and services a country uses for consumption and investment purposes must necessarily be equal to the difference between the country's exports and imports, which is precisely the trade balance. Let $Q_{t}$ denote the amount of goods and services produced domestically in period $t$. This measure of output is typically referred to as gross domestic product (GDP). Let $C_{t}$ denote the amount of goods and services consumed domestically in period $t$ and $I_{t}$ denote the amount of goods and services used for domestic investment (in plants, infrastructure, etc.) in period $t$. We will refer to $C_{t}$ and $I_{t}$ simply as consumption and investment in period $t$, respectively. Then we have

$$
X_{t}-I M_{t}=Q_{t}-C_{t}-I_{t}
$$

or, combining this expression with equation (1.7),

$$
\begin{equation*}
T B_{t}=Q_{t}-C_{t}-I_{t} \tag{1.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Plugging this relation into equation (1.6) yields

$$
C A_{t}=r B_{t-1}^{*}+Q_{t}-C_{t}-I_{t}
$$

The sum of GDP and net investment income, is called national income, or gross national product (GNP). We will denote national income in period $t$ by $Y_{t}$, that is,

$$
Y_{t}=Q_{t}+r B_{t-1}^{*} .
$$

Combining the last two expressions results in the following representation of the current account

$$
\begin{equation*}
C A_{t}=Y_{t}-C_{t}-I_{t} . \tag{1.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

National savings, which we will denote by $S_{t}$, is defined as the difference between income and consumption, that is,

$$
S_{t}=Y_{t}-C_{t} .
$$

It then follows from equation (1.9) that the current account is equal to saving minus investment,

$$
\begin{equation*}
C A_{t}=S_{t}-I_{t} \tag{1.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

According to this relation, a deficit in the current account occurs when a country's investment exceeds its saving. Conversely, a current account surplus obtains when a country's investment falls short of its saving.

Another concept frequently used in macroeconomics is that of absorption, which we will denote by $A_{t}$. A country's absorption is defined as the sum of consumption and investment,

$$
A_{t}=C_{t}+I_{t}
$$

Combining this definition with equation (1.9), the current account can be expressed as the difference between income and absorption:

$$
\begin{equation*}
C A_{t}=Y_{t}-A_{t} \tag{1.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Summing up, we have derived four alternative expressions for the current account:

$$
\begin{aligned}
C A_{t} & =B_{t}^{*}-B_{t-1}^{*} \\
C A_{t} & =r B_{t-1}^{*}+T B_{t} \\
C A_{t} & =S_{t}-I_{t} \\
C A_{t} & =Y_{t}-A_{t}
\end{aligned}
$$

which emphasize the relationship between the current account and alternative macroeconomic aggregates: respectively, the accumulation of foreign assets, the trade balance, savings and investment, and income and absorption.

### 1.5 Appendix: Perpetual Trade-Balance and CurrentAccount Deficits in Infinite-Horizon Economies

Suppose that the economy starts in period 1 and lasts indefinitely. The net foreign asset position at the end of period 1 takes the familiar form

$$
B_{1}^{*}=(1+r) B_{0}^{*}+T B_{1},
$$

Solve for $B_{0}^{*}$ to obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{0}^{*}=\frac{B_{1}^{*}}{1+r}-\frac{T B_{1}}{1+r} . \tag{1.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Now shift this expression one period forward to yield

$$
B_{1}^{*}=\frac{B_{2}^{*}}{1+r}-\frac{T B_{2}}{1+r} .
$$

Use this formula to eliminate $B_{1}^{*}$ from equation (1.12) to obtain

$$
B_{0}^{*}=\frac{B_{2}^{*}}{(1+r)^{2}}-\frac{T B_{1}}{1+r}-\frac{T B_{2}}{(1+r)^{2}} .
$$

Shifting (1.12) two periods forward yields

$$
B_{2}^{*}=\frac{B_{3}^{*}}{1+r}-\frac{T B_{3}}{1+r} .
$$

Combining this expression with the one right above it, we obtain

$$
B_{0}^{*}=\frac{B_{3}^{*}}{(1+r)^{3}}-\frac{T B_{1}}{1+r}-\frac{T B_{2}}{(1+r)^{2}}-\frac{T B_{3}}{(1+r)^{3}}
$$

Repeating this iterative procedure $T$ times results in the relationship

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{0}^{*}=\frac{B_{T}^{*}}{(1+r)^{T}}-\frac{T B_{1}}{1+r}-\frac{T B_{2}}{(1+r)^{2}}-\cdots-\frac{T B_{T}}{(1+r)^{T}} . \tag{1.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

In an infinite-horizon economy, the no-Ponzi-game constraint becomes $\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{B_{T}}{(1+r)^{T}} \geq$ 0 . $\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{B_{T}}{(1+r)^{T}} \geq 0$. This expression says that the net foreign debt of a country must grow at a rate less than $r$. Note that having a debt that grows at the rate $r$ (or higher) is indeed a scheme in which the principal and the interest accrued on the debt are perpetually rolled over. That is, it is a scheme whereby the debt is never paid off. The no-Ponzi-game constraint precludes this type of situations. At the same time, the country will not want to have a net credit with the rest of the world growing at a rate $r$ or higher, because that would mean that the rest of the world forever rolls over its debt with the country in question. This means that the path of net investment positions must satisfy $\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{B_{T}}{(1+r)^{T}} \leq 0$. This restriction and the no-Ponzi-game constraint can be simultaneously satisfied only if the following transversality condition holds:

$$
\lim _{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{B_{T}}{(1+r)^{T}}=0 .
$$

Letting $T$ go to infinity and using this transversality condition, equation (1.13) becomes

$$
B_{0}^{*}=-\frac{T B_{1}}{1+r}-\frac{T B_{2}}{(1+r)^{2}}-\ldots
$$

This expression states that the initial net foreign asset position of a country must equal the present discounted value of the stream of current a future expected trade deficits. Clearly, if the initial foreign asset position of the country is negative $\left(B_{0}^{*}<0\right)$, then the country must run trade balance surpluses at some point. We conclude that regardless of whether we consider a finite horizon economy or an infinite horizon economy, a country that starts with a negative net foreign asset positions cannot run perpetual trade balance deficits.

We next reconsider the question of whether a country can run perpetual current account deficits. In section 1.3, we show that in a finite-horizon economy a country whose initial net foreign asset position is negative cannot run perpetual current account deficits. We will now show that this result does not necessarily carry over to an infinite-horizon economy. We can write the evolution of the country's net foreign asset position at a generic period $t=1,2,3, \ldots$ as

$$
B_{t}^{*}=(1+r) B_{t-1}^{*}+T B_{t} .
$$

Suppose that the initial net foreign asset positions of the country, $B_{0}^{*}$ is negative. That is, the country starts out as a net debtor to the rest of the world. Consider an example in which each period the country ganerates a trade balance surplus sufficient to pay a fraction $\alpha$ of its interest obligations. That is,

$$
T B_{t}=-\alpha r B_{t-1}^{*}
$$

where the factor $\alpha$ is between 0 and 1 . This policy gives rise to the following law of motion for the net foreign asset position:

$$
B_{t}^{*}=(1+r-\alpha r) B_{t-1}^{*}
$$

Notice that because $B_{0}^{*}$ is negative and because $1+r-\alpha r$ is positive, we have that the net foreign asset position of the country will be forever negative. This in turn means that each period, the country runs a current account deficit. To see this, recall that the current account is given by $C A_{t}=$ $r B_{t-1}^{*}+T B_{t}$, which, given the assumed debt-servicing policy, results in

$$
C A_{t}=r(1-\alpha) B_{t-1}^{*} .
$$

A natural question is whether the country is satisfying the transversality condition. The law of motion of $B_{t}^{*}$ given above implies that

$$
B_{t}^{*}=(1+r-\alpha r)^{t} B_{0}^{*} .
$$

It follows that

$$
\frac{B_{t}^{*}}{(1+r)^{t}}=\left[\frac{1+r(1-\alpha)}{1+r}\right]^{t} B_{0}^{*}
$$

which converges to zero as $t$ becomes large because $1+r>1+r(1-\alpha)$.
Notice that under the assumed policy the trade balance evolves according to

$$
T B_{t}=-\alpha r[1+r(1-\alpha)]^{t} B_{0}^{*} .
$$

That is, $T B_{t}$ grows unboundedly over time at the rate $r(1-\alpha)$. In order for a country to be able to generate this path of trade balance surpluses, its GDP must be growing over time at a rate equal or greater than $r(1-\alpha)$. If this condition is satisfied, the repayment policy described in this example would support perpetual current account deficits even if the initial net foreign asset position is negative.

## Chapter 2

## A Theory of Current Account Determination

In this chapter, we build a model of an open economy, that is, of an economy that trades in goods and financial assets with the rest of the world. We then use that model to study the determinants of the trade balance and the current account. In particular, we study the response of consumption, the trade balance, and the current account to a variety of economic shocks, such as changes in income and the world interest rate. We pay special attention to how those responses depend on whether the shocks are of a permanent or temporary nature.

### 2.1 A Two-Period Economy

Consider an economy in which people live for two periods, 1 and 2, and are endowed with $Q_{1}$ units of goods in period 1 and $Q_{2}$ units in period 2. Goods are assumed to be perishable in the sense that they cannot be stored from one period to the next. In addition, households are assumed to be endowed with $B_{0}^{*}$ units of a bond. In period 1 , these bond holdings generate interest income in the amount of $r_{0} B_{0}^{*}$, where $r_{0}$ denotes the interest rate on bonds held between periods 0 and 1 . In period 1 , the household's income is given by the sum of interest on its bond holdings and its endowment of goods, $r_{0} B_{0}^{*}+Q_{1}$. The household can allocate its income to two alternative uses: purchases of consumption goods, which we denote by $C_{1}$, and purchases of bonds, $B_{1}^{*}-B_{0}^{*}$, where $B_{1}^{*}$ denotes bond holdings at the end of period 1 . Thus, in period 1 the household faces the following budget constraint:

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{1}+B_{1}^{*}-B_{0}^{*}=r_{0} B_{0}^{*}+Q_{1} . \tag{2.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly, in period 2 the representative household faces a constraint stating that consumption expenditure plus bond purchases must equal income:

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{2}+B_{2}^{*}-B_{1}^{*}=r_{1} B_{1}^{*}+Q_{2}, \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $C_{2}$ denotes consumption in period $2, r_{1}$ denotes the interest rate on assets held between periods 1 and 2 , and $B_{2}^{*}$ denotes bond holdings at the end of period 2. As explained in chapter 1, by the no-Ponzi-game constraint households are not allowed to leave any debt at the end of period 2 , that is, $B_{2}^{*}$ must be greater than or equal to zero. Also, because the world is assumed to last for only 2 periods, agents will choose not to hold any positive amount assets at the end of period 2, as they will not be around in period 3 to spend those savings in consumption. Thus, asset holdings at the end of period 2 must be exactly equal to 0 :

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{2}^{*}=0 . \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Combining the budget constraints (2.1) and (2.2) and the terminal condition (2.3) to eliminate $B_{1}^{*}$ and $B_{2}^{*}$, gives rise to the following lifetime budget constraint of the household:

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{1}+\frac{C_{2}}{1+r_{1}}=\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}+Q_{1}+\frac{Q_{2}}{1+r_{1}} . \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

This intertemporal budget constraint requires that the present discounted value of consumption (the left-hand side) be equal to the initial stock of wealth plus the present discounted value of the endowment stream (the right-hand side). The household chooses consumption in periods 1 and 2, $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$, taking as given all other variables appearing in (2.4), $r_{0}, r_{1}, B_{0}^{*}$, $Q_{1}$, and $Q_{2}$.

Figure 2.1 displays the pairs $\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$ that satisfy the household's intertemporal budget constraint (2.4). For simplicity, we assume for the remainder of this section that the household's initial asset position is zero, that is, we assume that $B_{0}^{*}=0$. Then, clearly, the basket $C_{1}=Q_{1}$ and $C_{2}=Q_{2}$ (point A in the figure) is feasible in the sense that it satisfies the intertemporal budget constraint (2.4). In words, the household can eat his endowment in each period. But the household's choices are not limited to this particular basket. In effect, in period 1 the household can consume more or less than $Q_{1}$ by borrowing or saving the amount $C_{1}-Q_{1}$. If the household wants to increase consumption in one period, it must sacrifice some consumption in the other period. In particular, for each additional unit of consumption in period 1 , the household has to give up $1+r_{1}$ units of consumption in period 2. This means that the slope of the budget constraint is $-\left(1+r_{1}\right)$. Note that

Figure 2.1: The intertemporal budget constraint

points on the budget constraint located southeast of point A correspond to borrowing (or dissaving) in period 1. Letting $S_{1}$ denote savings in period 1, we have that $S_{1}=r_{0} B_{0}^{*}+Q_{1}-C_{1}=Q_{1}-C_{1}<0$ (recall that we are assuming that $\left.B_{0}^{*}=0\right)$. At the same time, fact that $S_{1}<0$ implies, by the relation $S_{1}=B_{1}^{*}-B_{0}^{*}$, that the household's asset position at the end of period $1, B_{1}^{*}$, is negative. This in turn implies that a point on the budget constraint located southeast of the endowment point $A$ is also associated with positive saving in period 2 because $S_{2}=B_{2}^{*}-B_{1}^{*}=-B_{1}^{*}>0$ (recall that $B_{2}^{*}=0$ ). On the other hand, points on the budget constraint located northwest of A are associated with positive saving in period 1 and dissaving in period 2. If the household chooses to allocate its entire lifetime income to consumption in period 1 , then $C_{1}=Q_{1}+Q_{2} /\left(1+r_{1}\right)$ and $C_{2}=0$. This point corresponds to the intersection of the budget constraint with the horizontal axis. If the household chooses to allocate all its lifetime income to consumption in period 2 , then $C_{2}=\left(1+r_{1}\right) Q_{1}+Q_{2}$ and $C_{1}=0$; this basket is located at the intersection of the budget constraint with the vertical axis.

Which consumption bundle on the budget constraint the household will choose depends on its preferences. We will assume that households like both $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ and that their preferences can be described by the utility function

$$
\begin{equation*}
U\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right), \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where the function $U$ is strictly increasing in both arguments. Figure 2.2 displays the household's indifference curves. You should be familiar with

Figure 2.2: Indifference curves

the concept of indifference curves from introductory Microeconomics. All consumption baskets on a given indifference curve provide the same level of utility. Because consumption in both periods are goods, that is, items for which more is preferred to less, as one moves northeast in figure 2.3 , utility increases. Note that the indifference curves drawn in figure 2.2 are convex toward the origin, so that at low levels of $C_{1}$ relative to $C_{2}$ the indifference curves are steeper than at relatively high levels of $C_{1}$. Intuitively, the convexity of the indifference curves means that at low levels of consumption in period 1 relative to consumption in period 2 , the household is willing to give up relatively many units of period 2 consumption for an additional unit of period 1 consumption. On the other hand, if period-1 consumption is high relative to period- 2 consumption, then the household will not be willing to sacrifice much period 2 consumption for an additional unit of period 1 consumption. The negative of the slope of an indifference curve is known as the marginal rate of substitution of $C_{2}$ for $C_{1}$. Therefore, the assumption of convexity means that along a given indifference curve, the marginal rate of substitution decreases with $C_{1}$.

Households choose $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ so as to maximize the utility function (2.5) subject to the lifetime budget constraint (2.4). Figure 2.3 displays the life-

Figure 2.3: Equilibrium in the endowment economy

time budget constraint together with the household's indifference curves. At the feasible basket that maximizes the household's utility, the indifference curve is tangent to the budget constraint (point B). Formally, the tangency between the budget constraint and the indifference curve is given by the following first-order condition of the household's maximization problem:

$$
\begin{equation*}
U_{1}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)=\left(1+r_{1}\right) U_{2}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right), \tag{2.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $U_{1}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$ and $U_{2}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$ denote the marginal utilities of consumption in periods 1 and 2 , respectively. The marginal utility of consumption in period 1 indicates the increase in utility resulting from the consumption of an additional unit of $C_{1}$ holding constant $C_{2}$. Similarly, the marginal utility of period 2 consumption represents the increase in utility associated with a unit increase in $C_{2}$ holding constant $C_{1}$. Technically, the marginal utilities of $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ are defined as the partial derivatives of $U\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$ with respect to $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$, respectively. ${ }^{1}$

[^4]Condition (2.6) is quite intuitive. Suppose that the consumer sacrifices one unit of consumption in period 1 and saves it by buying a bond paying the interest rate $r_{1}$ in period 2 . Then his utility in period 1 falls by $U_{1}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$. In period 2 , he receives $\left(1+r_{1}\right)$ units of consumption each of which gives $\operatorname{him} U_{2}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$ units of utility, so that his utility in period 2 increases by $\left(1+r_{1}\right) U_{2}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$. If the left-hand side of (2.6) is greater than the righthand side, the consumer can increase his lifetime utility by saving less (and hence consuming more) in period 1 . Conversely, if the left-hand side of (2.6) is less than the right-hand side, the consumer will be better off saving more (and consuming less) in period 1. At the optimal allocation, the left- and right-hand sides of (2.6) must be equal to each other, so that in the margin the consumer is indifferent between consuming an extra unit in period 1 and consuming $1+r_{1}$ extra units in period $2 .{ }^{2}$

### 2.1.1 Equilibrium

We assume that all households in the economy are identical. Thus, by studying the behavior of an individual household, we are also learning about the behavior of the country as a whole. For this reason, we will not distinguish between the behavior of an individual household and that of the country as a whole. To keep things simple, we further assume that there is no investment in physical capital. (In chapter 3, we will extend the model by allowing for production and capital accumulation.) Finally, we assume that the country has free access to international financial markets. This means that the domestic interest rate, $r_{1}$, must be equal to the world interest rate, which we will denote by $r^{*}$, that is,

$$
r_{1}=r^{*}
$$

represents the negative of the slope of the indifference curve at the basket $\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$, or the marginal rate of substitution of $C_{2}$ for $C_{1}$. To see that (2.6) states that at the optimum the indifference curve is tangent to the budget constraint, divide the left and right hand sides of that equation by $-U_{2}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$ to obtain

$$
-\frac{U_{1}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)}{U_{2}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)}=-\left(1+r_{1}\right)
$$

and recall that $-\left(1+r_{1}\right)$ is the slope of the budget constraint.
${ }^{2}$ One way of obtaining (2.6) is to solve for $C_{2}$ in (2.4) and to plug the result in the utility function (2.5) to get rid of $C_{2}$. The resulting expression is $U\left(C_{1},\left(1+r_{0}\right)\left(1+r_{1}\right) B_{0}^{*}+\right.$ $\left.\left(1+r_{1}\right) Q_{1}+Q_{2}-\left(1+r_{1}\right) C_{1}\right)$ and depends only on $C_{1}$ and other parameters that the household takes as given. Taking the derivative of this expression with respect to $C_{1}$ and setting it equal to zero-which is a necessary condition for a maximum-yields (2.6).

If this condition is satisfied we will say that interest rate parity holds. The country is assumed to be sufficiently small so that its savings decisions do not affect the world interest rate. Because all households are identical, at any point in time all domestic residents will make identical saving decisions. This implies that domestic households will never borrow or lend from one another and that all borrowing or lending takes the form of purchases or sales of foreign assets. Thus, we can interpret $B_{t}^{*}(t=0,1,2)$ as the country's net foreign asset position in period $t$.

An equilibrium then is a consumption bundle $\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$ and an interest rate $r_{1}$ that satisfy the household's intertemporal budget constraint, the household's first-order condition for utility maximization, and interest rate parity, that is,

$$
\begin{gathered}
C_{1}+\frac{C_{2}}{1+r_{1}}=\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}+Q_{1}+\frac{Q_{2}}{1+r_{1}} \\
U_{1}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)=\left(1+r_{1}\right) U_{2}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)
\end{gathered}
$$

and

$$
r_{1}=r^{*},
$$

given the exogenous variables $\left\{r_{0}, B_{0}^{*}, Q_{1}, Q_{2}, r^{*}\right\}$.
At this point, we will pause to revisit the basic balance-of-payments accounting in our two-period model. We first show that the lifetime budget constraint of the household can be expressed in terms of current and expected future trade balances. Begin by rearranging terms in the intertemporal budget constraint (2.4) to express it in the form

$$
\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}=-\left(Q_{1}-C_{1}\right)-\frac{\left(Q_{2}-C_{2}\right)}{1+r_{1}} .
$$

In our simple economy, the trade balance in period 1 equals the difference between the endowment of goods in period $1, Q_{1}$, and consumption of goods in period $1, C_{1}$, that is, $T B_{1}=Q_{1}-C_{1}$. Similarly, the trade balance in period 2 is given by $T B_{2}=Q_{2}-C_{2}$. Using these expressions for $T B_{1}$ and $T B_{2}$ and recalling that in equilibrium $r_{1}=r^{*}$, we can write the lifetime budget constraint as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}=-T B_{1}-\frac{T B_{2}}{1+r^{*}} . \tag{2.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression, which should be familiar from chapter 1, states that a country's present discounted value of trade deficits must equal its initial net foreign asset position including net investment income. If the country starts
out as a debtor of the rest of the world ( $B_{0}^{*}<0$ ), then it must run a trade surplus in at least one period in order to repay its debt ( $T B_{1}>0$ or $T B_{2}>0$ or both). Conversely, if at the beginning of period 1 the country is a net creditor $\left(B_{0}^{*}>0\right)$, then it can use its initial wealth to finance current or future trade deficits. In particular, it need not run a trade surplus in either period. In the special case in which the country starts with a zero stock of foreign wealth $\left(B_{0}^{*}=0\right)$, a trade deficit in one period must be offset by a trade surplus in the other period.

The lifetime budget constraint can also be written in terms of the current account. To do this, recall that the current account is equal to the sum of net investment income and the trade balance. Thus in period 1 the current account is given by $C A_{1}=r_{0} B_{0}^{*}+T B_{1}$ and the current account in period 2 is given by $C A_{2}=r^{*} B_{1}^{*}+T B_{2}$. Using these two definitions to eliminate $T B_{1}$ and $T B_{2}$ from equation (2.7) yields

$$
\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}=-\left(C A_{1}-r_{0} B_{0}^{*}\right)-\frac{\left(C A_{2}-r^{*} B_{1}^{*}\right)}{1+r^{*}} .
$$

Using the definition $C A_{1}=B_{1}^{*}-B_{0}^{*}$ to eliminate $B_{1}^{*}$, we obtain, after collecting terms,

$$
B_{0}^{*}=-C A_{1}-C A_{2} .
$$

This alternative way of writing the lifetime budget constraint makes it clear that if the country is an initial debtor, then it must run a current account surplus in at least one period $\left(C A_{1}>0\right.$ or $\left.C A_{2}>0\right)$. On the other hand, if the country starts out as a net creditor to the rest of the world, then it can run current and/or future current account deficits. Finally, if the country begins with no foreign debt or assets $\left(B_{0}^{*}=0\right)$, a current account deficit in one period must be offset by a current account surplus in the other period.

Let's now go back to the equilibrium in the small open economy shown in figure 2.3. At the equilibrium allocation, point B , the country runs a trade deficit in period 1 because $Q_{1}-C_{1}$ is negative. Also, recalling our maintained assumption that foreign asset holdings in period 0 are nil, the current account in period 1 equals the trade balance in that period ( $C A_{1}=$ $\left.r_{0} B_{0}^{*}+T B_{1}=T B_{1}\right)$. Thus, the current account is in deficit in period 1. The current account deficit in period 1 implies that the country starts period 2 as a net debtor to the rest of the world. As a result, in period 2 the country must generate a trade surplus to repay the debt plus interest, that is, $T B_{2}=Q_{2}-C_{2}>0$.

### 2.2 Capital controls

Current account deficits are often viewed as something bad for a country. The idea behind this view is that by running a current account deficit the economy is living beyond its means. As a result, the argument goes, as the country accumulates external debt, it imposes future economic hardship on itself in the form of reduced consumption and investment spending when the foreign debt becomes due. A policy recommendation frequently offered to countries undergoing external imbalances is the imposition of capital controls. In their most severe form, capital controls consist in the prohibition of borrowing from the rest of the world. Milder versions take the form of taxes on international capital inflows.

We can use the model economy developed in this chapter to study the welfare consequences of prohibiting international borrowing. Suppose that the equilibrium under free capital mobility is as described in figure 2.3. That is, households optimally choose to borrow from the rest of the world in period 1 in order to finance a level of consumption that exceeds their endowment. Assume now that the government prohibits international borrowing. The equilibrium under this restriction is depicted in figure 2.4. If agents cannot

Figure 2.4: Equilibrium under capital controls

borrow from the rest of the world in period 1 , that is, $B_{1}^{*} \geq 0$, then in that period they can at most consume their endowment. Because under free capital mobility $C_{1}$ was greater than $Q_{1}$, the borrowing constraint will be binding, so that in the constrained equilibrium $B_{1}^{*}=0$ and $C_{1}=Q_{1}$. The fact that consumption equals the endowment implies that the trade balance in period 1 is zero $\left(T B_{1}=0\right)$. Given our assumption that the initial net foreign asset position is zero $\left(B_{0}^{*}\right)$, the current account in period 1 is also nil $\left(C A_{1}=0\right)$. This in turn implies that the country starts period 2 with zero external debt ( $B_{1}^{*}=B_{0}^{*}+C A_{1}=0$ ). As a consequence, the country can use its entire period 2 endowment for consumption purposes ( $C_{2}=Q_{2}$ ).

The capital controls are successful in achieving the government's goal of curbing current-account deficits and allowing for higher future spending. But do capital controls make households happier? To answer this question, note that the indifference curve that passes through the endowment point A lies southwest of the indifference curve that passes through point $B$, the optimal consumption bundle under free capital mobility. Therefore, the level of utility, or welfare, is lower in the absence of free capital mobility. [Question: Suppose the equilibrium allocation under free capital mobility lay northwest of the endowment point A. Would it still be true that eliminating free international capital mobility is welfare decreasing?]

Under capital controls the domestic interest rate $r_{1}$ is no longer equal to the world interest rate $r^{*}$. At the world interest rate, domestic households would like to borrow from foreign lenders in order to spend beyond their endowments. But international funds are unavailable. Thus, the domestic interest rate must rise above the world interest rate to bring about equilibrium in the domestic financial market. Graphically, $1+r_{1}$ is given by the negative of the slope of the indifference curve at A , which is not only the endowment point but also the optimal consumption bundle under capital controls. Only at that interest rate are are households willing to consume exactly their endowment.

### 2.3 Current account adjustment to output, terms of trade, and world interest rate shocks

### 2.3.1 Temporary Output Shocks

In this section we study the adjustment process of a small economy experiencing a temporary variation in output. For example, suppose that Ecuador looses 20 percent of its banana crop due to a drought. Suppose further that
this decline in output is temporary, in the sense that it is expected that next year the banana crop will be back at its normal level. How would such a shock affect consumption, the trade balance, and the current account? Intuitively, Ecuadorian households will cope with the negative income shock by running down their savings or even borrowing against their future income levels, which are unaffected by the drought. In this way, they can smooth consumption over time by not having to cut current spending by as much as the decline in output. It follows that the temporary drought will induce a worsening of the trade balance and the current account.

Formally, assume that the negative shock produces a decline in output in period 1 from $Q_{1}$ to $Q_{1}-\Delta<Q_{1}$, but leaves output in period 2 unchanged. The situation is illustrated in figure 2.5 , where A denotes the endowment be-

Figure 2.5: A temporary decline in output and the intertemporal budget constraint

fore the shock $\left(Q_{1}, Q_{2}\right)$ and $\mathrm{A}^{\prime}$ the endowment after the shock $\left(Q_{1}-\Delta, Q_{2}\right)$. Note that because $Q_{2}$ is unchanged points $A$ and $A^{\prime}$ can be connected by a horizontal line. As a consequence of the decline in $Q_{1}$, the budget constraint shifts toward the origin. The new budget constraint is parallel to the old one because the world interest rate is unchanged. The household could adjust to the output shock by reducing consumption in period 1 by exactly
the amount of the output decline, $\Delta$, thus leaving consumption in period 2 unchanged. However, if both $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ are normal goods (i.e., goods whose consumption increases with income), the household will choose to smooth consumption by reducing both $C_{1}$ (by less than $\Delta$ ) and $C_{2}$. Figure 2.6 depicts the economy's response to the temporary output shock. As a result

Figure 2.6: Adjustment to a temporary decline in output

of the shock, the new optimal consumption bundle, $\mathrm{B}^{\prime}$, is located southwest of the pre-shock consumption allocation, B. In smoothing consumption over time, the country runs a larger trade deficit in period 1 (recall that it was running a trade deficit even in the absence of the shock) and finances it by acquiring additional foreign debt. Thus, the current account deteriorates. In period 2, the country must generate a larger trade surplus than the one it would have produced in the absence of the shock in order to pay back the additional debt acquired in period 1 .

The important principle to take away from this example is that temporary negative income shocks are smoothed out by borrowing from the rest of the world rather than by adjusting current consumption by the size of the shock. [Question: How would the economy respond to a temporary positive income shock?]

### 2.3.2 Permanent Output Shocks

The pattern of adjustment to changes in income is quite different when the income shock is of a more permanent nature.

To continue with the example of the drought in Ecuador, suppose that the drought is not just a one-year event, but is expected to last for many years due to global climate changes. In this case, it would not be optimal for households to borrow against future income, because future income is expected to be as low as current income. Instead, Ecuadorian consumers will have to adjust to the new climatic conditions by cutting consumption in all periods by roughly the size of the decline in the value of the banana harvest.

Formally, consider a permanent negative output shock that reduces both $Q_{1}$ and $Q_{2}$ by $\Delta$. Figure 2.7 illustrates the situation. As a result of the

Figure 2.7: Adjustment to a permanent decline in output

decline in endowments, the budget constraint shifts to the left in a parallel fashion. The new budget constraint crosses the point $\left(Q_{1}-\Delta, Q_{2}-\Delta\right)$. As in the case of a temporary output shock, consumption-smoothing agents will adjust by reducing consumption in both periods. If consumption in each period fell by exactly $\Delta$, then the trade balance would be unaffected in both
periods. In general the decline in consumption should be expected to be close to $\Delta$, implying that a permanent output shock has little consequences on the trade balance or the current account.

Comparing the effects of temporary and permanent shocks on the current account, the following general principle emerges: Economies will tend to finance temporary shocks (by borrowing or lending on international capital markets) and adjust to permanent ones (by varying consumption in both periods up or down). Thus, temporary shocks tend to produce large movements in the current account while permanent shocks tend to leave the current account largely unchanged.

### 2.3.3 Terms-of-Trade Shocks

Thus far, we have assumed that the country's endowments $Q_{1}$ and $Q_{2}$ can be either consumed or exported. This assumption, although useful to understand the basic functioning of our small open economy, is clearly unrealistic. In reality, the goods that account for most of a country's exports represent only a small fraction of that country's consumers' basquets. For instance, some countries in the Middle East are highly specialized in the production of oil and import a large fraction of the goods they consume. To capture this aspect of the real world, let us now modify our model by assuming that the good households like to consume, say food, is different from the good they are endowed with, say oil. In such an economy, both $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ must be imported, while $Q_{1}$ and $Q_{2}$ must be exported. Let $P^{M}$ and $P^{X}$ denote the prices of imports and exports, respectively. A country's terms of trade, $T T$, is the relative price of a country's exports in terms of of imports, that is, $T T \equiv P^{X} / P^{M}$. In terms of our example, $T T$ represents the price of oil in terms of food. Thus, $T T$ indicates the amount of food that the country can buy from the sale of one barrel of oil. Assuming that foreign assets are expressed in units of consumption, the household's budget constraints in periods 1 and 2 , respectively, are:

$$
C_{1}+B_{1}^{*}-B_{0}^{*}=r_{0} B_{0}^{*}+T T_{1} Q_{1}
$$

and

$$
C_{2}+B_{2}^{*}-B_{1}^{*}=r_{1} B_{1}^{*}+T T_{2} Q_{2} .
$$

These budget constraints are identical to (2.1) and (2.2) except for the fact that the terms of trade are multiplying the endowments. Using the terminal condition $B_{2}^{*}=0$, the above two equations can be combined to obtain the
following lifetime budget constraint:

$$
C_{1}+\frac{C_{2}}{1+r_{1}}=\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}+T T_{1} Q_{1}+\frac{T T_{2} Q_{2}}{1+r_{1}}
$$

Comparing this lifetime budget constraint with the one given in equation (2.4), it is clear that terms of trade shocks are just like output shocks. Thus, in response to a transitory terms of trade deterioration (a transitory decline in TT), the economy will not adjust consumption much and instead will borrow on the international capital market, which will result in a current account deficit. On the other hand, in response to a permanent terms of trade deterioration (i.e., a fall in both $T T_{1}$ and $T T_{2}$ ), the country is likely to adjust consumption down, with little change in the trade balance or the current account.

### 2.3.4 World Interest Rate Shocks

An increase in the world interest rate, $r^{*}$, has two potentially opposing effects on consumption in period 1 . On the one hand, an increase in the interest rate makes savings more attractive because the rate of return on foreign assets is higher. This effect is referred to as the substitution effect, because it induces people to substitute future for present consumption through saving. By the substitution effect, a rise in the interest rate causes consumption in period 1 to decline and therefore the current account to improve. On the other hand, an increase in the interest rate makes debtors poorer and creditors richer. This is called the income effect. By the income effect, an increase in the interest rate leads to a decrease in consumption in period 1 if the country is a debtor, reinforcing the substitution effect, and to an increase in consumption if the country is a creditor, offsetting (at least in part) the substitution effect. We will assume that the substitution effect is stronger than the income effect, so that savings increases in response to an increase in interest rates. Therefore, an increase in the world interest rate, $r^{*}$, induces a decline in $C_{1}$ and thus an improvement in the trade balance and the current account in period 1 .

Figure 2.8 describes the case of an increase in the world interest rate from $r^{*}$ to $r^{*}+\Delta$. We deduced before that the slope of the budget constraint is given by $-\left(1+r^{*}\right)$. Thus, an increase in $r^{*}$ makes the budget constraint steeper. Because the household can always consume its endowment (recall that $B_{0}^{*}$ is assumed to be zero), point $A$ must lie on both the old and the new budget constraints. This means that in response to the increase in $r^{*}$, the budget constraint rotates clockwise through point A. The initial optimal

Figure 2.8: Adjustment to a world interest rate shock

consumption point is given by point B, where the household is borrowing in period 1. The new consumption allocation is point $\mathrm{B}^{\prime}$, which is located west of the original allocation, B. The increase in the world interest rate is associated with a decline in $C_{1}$ and thus an improvement in the trade balance and the current account in period 1. Note that because the household was initially borrowing, the income and substitution effects triggered by the rise in the interest rate reinforce each other, so savings increase unambiguously.

### 2.4 An algebraic example

Thus far, we have used a graphical approach to analyze the determination of the current account in the two-period economy. We now illustrate, by means of an example, the basic results using an algebraic approach. Let the utility function be of a log-linear type:

$$
U\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)=\ln C_{1}+\ln C_{2},
$$

where $\ln$ denotes the natural logarithm. In this case the marginal utility of consumption in the first period, $U_{1}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$, is given by

$$
U_{1}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)=\frac{\partial U\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)}{\partial C_{1}}=\frac{\partial\left(\ln C_{1}+\ln C_{2}\right)}{\partial C_{1}}=\frac{1}{C_{1}}
$$

Similarly, the marginal utility of period 2 consumption, $U_{2}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$ is given by

$$
U_{2}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)=\frac{\partial U\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)}{\partial C_{2}}=\frac{\partial\left(\ln C_{1}+\ln C_{2}\right)}{\partial C_{2}}=\frac{1}{C_{2}}
$$

Here we used the fact that the derivative of the function $\ln x$ is $1 / x$, that is, $\partial \ln x / \partial x=1 / x$. The household's first-order condition for utility maximization says that the optimal consumption allocation must satisfy the condition

$$
U_{1}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)=\left(1+r_{1}\right) U_{2}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)
$$

For the particular functional form for the utility function considered here, the above optimality condition becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{C_{1}}=\left(1+r_{1}\right) \frac{1}{C_{2}} \tag{2.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Next, consider the intertemporal budget constraint of the economy (2.4):

$$
C_{1}+\frac{C_{2}}{1+r_{1}}=\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}+Q_{1}+\frac{Q_{2}}{1+r_{1}} .
$$

Define $\bar{Y}=\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}+Q_{1}+\frac{Q_{2}}{1+r_{1}}$. The variable $\bar{Y}$ represents the present discounted value of the household's total wealth, which is composed of his initial asset holdings and the stream of income $\left(Q_{1}, Q_{2}\right)$. Note that the household takes $\bar{Y}$ as given. We can rewrite the above expression as

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{1}=\bar{Y}-\frac{C_{2}}{1+r_{1}} . \tag{2.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Combining this expression with (2.8), yields

$$
C_{1}=\frac{1}{2} \bar{Y} .
$$

This result says that households find it optimal to consume half of their lifetime wealth in the first half of their lives.

In period 1, the trade balance is the difference between output and domestic spending, or $T B_{1}=Q_{1}-C_{1}$, and the current account is the sum of
the trade balance and interests received on net foreign assets holdings, or $C A_{1}=r_{0} B_{0}^{*}+T B_{1}$. Using the definition of $\bar{Y}$ and the fact that under free financial capital mobility the domestic interest rate must equal the world interest rate, or $r_{1}=r^{*}$, we have that $C_{1}, C_{2}, T B_{1}$, and $C A_{1}$ are given by

$$
\begin{gather*}
C_{1}=\frac{1}{2}\left[\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}+Q_{1}+\frac{Q_{2}}{1+r^{*}}\right] \\
C_{2}=\frac{1}{2}\left(1+r^{*}\right)\left[\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}+Q_{1}+\frac{Q_{2}}{1+r^{*}}\right] \\
T B_{1}=\frac{1}{2}\left[Q_{1}-\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}-\frac{Q_{2}}{1+r^{*}}\right]  \tag{2.10}\\
C A_{1}=r_{0} B_{0}^{*}+\frac{1}{2}\left[Q_{1}-\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}-\frac{Q_{2}}{1+r^{*}}\right] \tag{2.11}
\end{gather*}
$$

Consider now the effects of temporary and permanent output shocks on the trade balance and the current account. Assume first that income falls temporarily by one unit, that is, $Q_{1}$ decreases by one and $Q_{2}$ is unchanged. It follows from (2.10) and (2.11) that the trade balance and the current account both fall by half a unit. This is because consumption in period 1 falls by only half a unit.

Suppose now that income falls permanently by one unit, that is, $Q_{1}$ and $Q_{2}$ both fall by one. Then the trade balance and the current account decline by $\frac{1}{2} \frac{r^{*}}{1+r^{*}}$. Consumption in period 1 falls by $\frac{1}{2} \frac{2+r^{*}}{1+r^{*}}$. For realistic values of $r^{*}$, the predicted deterioration in the trade balance and current account in response to the assumed permanent negative income shock is close to zero and in particular much smaller than the deterioration associated with the temporary negative income shock. For example, assume that the world interest rate is 10 percent, $r^{*}=0.1$. Then, both the trade balance and the current account in period 1 fall by 0.046 in response to the permanent output shock and by 0.5 in response to the temporary shock. That is, the current account deterioration is 10 times larger under a temporary shock than under a permanent one.

Finally, consider the effect of an increase in the world interest rate $r^{*}$. Clearly, in period 1 consumption falls and both the trade balance and the current account improve. Note that the decline in consumption in period 1 is independent of whether the country is a net foreign borrower or a net foreign lender in period 1. This is because for the particular preference specification considered in this example, the substitution effect always dominates the income effect.

### 2.5 The Great Moderation and the U.S. Trade Balance

A number of resarchers have documented that the volatility of U.S. output declined significantly starting in the early 1980s. This phenomenon has become known as the Great Moderation. ${ }^{3}$ The standard deviation of quarter-to-quarter output growth was 1.2 percent over the period 1948 to 1983 and only 0.5 percent over the period 1984 to 2006 . That is, U.S. output became half as volatile in the past quarter century. Panel (a) of figure 2.9 depicts the quarterly growth rate of U.S. output from 1948:Q1 to 2006:Q4. It also shows with a vertical line the beginning of the great moderation in 1984. It is evident from the figure that the time series of output growth in the United States is much smoother in the post 1984 subsample than it is in the pre 1984 subsample.

Researchers have put forward three alternative explanations of the great moderation: good luck, good policy, and structural change. The goodluck hypothesis states that by chance, starting in the early 1980s the U.S. economy has been blessed with smaller shocks. This story does not provide a reason why the shocks all of the sudden became smaller. The good policy hypothesis maintains that starting with former Fed chairman Paul Volker's aggressive monetary policy that brought to an end the high inflation of the 1970s and continuing with the low inflation policy of Volker's successor Alan Greenspan, the United States experienced a period of extraordinary macroeconomic stability. Good regulatory policy has also been credited with the causes of the great moderartion. Specifically, the early 1980s witnessed the demise of regulation Q (or Reg Q). Regulation Q imposed a ceiling on the interest rate that banks could pay on deposits. As a result of this financial distortion, when expected inflation goes up (as it did in the 1970s) the real interest rate on deposits falls and can even become negative, inducing depositors to withdraw their funds from banks. As a consequence, banks are forced to reduce the volume loans generating a credit-crunch-induced recession. A third type of explanation states that the great moderation was in part caused by structural change, prticularly in inventory management and in the financial sector.

We will not dwell on which of the proposed explanations of the great moderation has more merit. Instead, our interest is in possible connections

[^5]Figure 2.9: The Great Moderation
(a) Per Capita U.S. GDP Growth 1948-2006

(b) U.S. Trade Balance To GDP Ratio 1948-2006


Source: http://www.bea.gov
between the great moderation and the significant trade balance deterioration observed in the U.S. over the past twenty five years. Panel (b) of figure 2.9 displays the ratio of the trade balance to GDP in the United States over the period 1948-2006. During the period 1948-1984 the United States experienced on average positive trade balances of about 0.2 percent of GDP. Starting in the early 1980s, however, the economy was subject to a string of large trade deficits averaging 2.6 percent of GDP.

### 2.5.1 Uncertainty and the Trade Balance

Is the timing of the great moderation and the emergence of trade deficits pure coincidence, or is there a causal connection between the two? To address this issue, we will explore the effects of changes in output uncertainty on the trade balance. In the economy studied thus far, the endowments $Q_{1}$ and $Q_{2}$ are known with certainty. What would be the effect of making the future endowment, $Q_{2}$, uncertain? That is, how would households adjust their consumption and savings decisions in period 1 if they knew that the endowment in period two could be either high or low with some probability? Intuitively, we should expect the emergence of precautionary savings in period 1. That is an increase in savings in period 1 to hedge against a bad income realization in period 2 . The desired increase in savings in period 1 must be brought about by a reduction in consumption in that period. With period-1 endowment unchanged and consumption lower, the trade balance must improve. We therefore have that an increase in uncertainty brings about an improvement in the trade balance. By the same token, a decline in income uncertainty, such as the one observed in the United States in the early 1980s, should be associated with a deterioration in the trade balance.

To formalize these ideas, consider an economy in which intially, the stream of output is known with certainty and constant over time. Specifically suppose that $Q_{1}=Q_{2}=Q$. Assume further that preferences are of the form $\ln C_{1}+\ln C_{2}$. To simplify the analysis, assume that initial asset holdings are nil, that is, $B_{0}^{*}=0$, and that the world interest rate is nil, or $r^{*}=0$. In this case, the intertemporal budget constraint of the representative household is given by $C_{2}=2 Q-C_{1}$. Using this expression to eliminate $C_{2}$ from the utility function, we have that the household's utility maximization problem consists in choosing $C_{1}$ so as to maximize $\ln C_{1}+\ln \left(2 Q-C_{1}\right)$. The solution to this problem is $C_{1}=C_{2}=Q$. It follows that the trade balance in period 1 , given by $Q_{1}-C_{1}$ is zero. That is,

$$
T B_{1}=0 .
$$

In this economy households do not need to save or disave in order to smooth consumption over time because the endowment stream is already perfectly smooth.

Consider now a situation in which $Q_{2}$ is not known with certainty in period 1. Specifically, assume that with probability $1 / 2$ the household receives a positive endowment shock in period 2 equal to $a>0$, and that with equal probability the household receives a negative endowment shock in the amount of $-a$. That is,

$$
Q_{2}= \begin{cases}Q+a & \text { with probability } 1 / 2 \\ Q-a & \text { with probability } 1 / 2\end{cases}
$$

We continue to assume that $Q_{1}=Q$. Note that this is a mean-preserving increase in uncertainty in the sense that the expected value of the endowment, given by $\frac{1}{2}(Q+a)+\frac{1}{2}(Q-a)$ equals $Q$, which equals the endowment that the household receives in period 2 in the economy without uncertainty.

We must specify how households value uncertain consumpiton bundles. We will assume that households care about the expected value of utility. Specifically, preferences under uncertainty are given by

$$
\ln C_{1}+E \ln C_{2},
$$

where $E$ denotes expected value. Note that this preference formulation encompasses the preference specificaiton we used in the absence of uncertainty. This is because when $C_{2}$ is known with certainty, then $E \ln C_{2}=\ln C_{2}$.

The budget constraint of the household in period 2 is given by $C_{2}=$ $2 Q+a-C_{1}$ in the good state of the world and by $C_{2}=2 Q-a-C_{1}$ in the bad state of the world. Therefore, expected lifetime utility, $\ln C_{1}+E \ln C_{2}$, is given by

$$
\ln C_{1}+\frac{1}{2} \ln \left(2 Q+a-C_{1}\right)+\frac{1}{2} \ln \left(2 Q-a-C_{1}\right) .
$$

The household chooses $C_{1}$ to maximoze this expression. The first-order optimality condition associated with this problem is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{1}{C_{1}}=\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{1}{2 Q+a-C_{1}}+\frac{1}{2 Q-a-C_{1}}\right] \tag{2.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression represents one equation in one unknown, namely $C_{1}$. Consider first whether the optimal consumption choice associated with the problem without uncertainty, given by $C_{1}=Q$, represents a solution in the case with uncertainty. If this was the case, then it would have to be true that

$$
\frac{1}{Q}=\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{1}{2 Q+a-Q}+\frac{1}{2 Q-a-Q}\right] .
$$

This expression can be further simplify to requiring that

$$
\frac{1}{Q}=\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{1}{Q+a}+\frac{1}{Q-a}\right]
$$

Further simplifying, we obtain

$$
1=\frac{Q^{2}}{Q^{2}-a^{2}},
$$

which is impossible, given that $a>0$. We have shown that if we set $C_{1}=$ $Q$, then the left side of optimality condition (2.12) is less than its right side. Because the left side of optimality condition (2.12) is decreasing in $C_{1}$ whereas the right side is increasing in $C_{1}$, it must be the case that the optimal level of consumption in period 1 satisfies

$$
C_{1}<Q .
$$

It then follows that in the economy with uncertainty the trade balance is positive in period 1 , or

$$
T B_{1}>0 .
$$

Households, use the trade balance as a vehicle to save to avoid having to cut consumption in the bad state of the world. The reason for this behavior is that with a convex marginal utility of consumption in period 2 a gift of $a$ units of consumption reduces marginal utility by less than the increase in marginal utility caused by a decline in consumption in the amount of $a$ units. As a result, the prospect of consuming $Q+a$ or $Q-a$ with equal probability in period 2 increases the expected marginal utility of consumption in that period. Because today's marginal utility must equal next period's, and because current marginal utility is decreasing in consumption, the adjustment to a mean-preserving increase in uncertainty about next period's endowment takes the form of a reduction in current consumption.

Question: Redo the analysis in this section assuming that households are risk neutral in period 2. Specifically, assume that their preferences are logarithmic in period-1 but linear in period-2 consumption. What would be the predicted effect of the great moderation on the trade balance in period 1 ?

## Chapter 3

## Current Account Determination in a Production Economy

Thus far, we have considered an endowment economy without investment, so that the current account was simply determined by savings. In this chapter, we extend our theory by studying the determination of the current account in an economy with investment in physical capital. In this economy, output is not given exogenously, but is instead produced by firms.

### 3.1 A production economy

### 3.1.1 Firms

Consider an economy in which output is produced with physical capital. Specifically, let $K_{1}$ and $K_{2}$ denote the capital stocks at the beginning of periods 1 and 2 , respectively, and assume that output is an increasing function of capital. Formally,

$$
Q_{1}=F\left(K_{1}\right)
$$

and

$$
Q_{2}=F\left(K_{2}\right)
$$

where, as before, $Q_{1}$ and $Q_{2}$ denote output in periods 1 and 2. $F(\cdot)$ is a production function, that is, a technological relation specifying the amount of output obtained for each level of capital input. Output is assumed to be zero when the capital stock is zero $(F(0)=0)$. We also assume that

Figure 3.1: The production function, $F(K)$


output is increasing in capital. Another way of stating this assumption is to say that the marginal product of capital is positive. The marginal product of capital is the amount by which output increases when the capital stock is increased by one unit and is given by the derivative of the production function with respect to capital:

$$
\text { marginal product of capital }=F^{\prime}(K)
$$

Finally, we assume that the marginal product of capital is decreasing in $K$, that is, $F^{\prime \prime}(K)<0$, which implies that the production function is concave. Panel (a) of figure 3.1 displays output as a function of the capital stock. The marginal product of capital at $K=K^{*}, F^{\prime}\left(K^{*}\right)$, is given by the slope of $F(K)$ at $K=K^{*}$. Panel (b) of figure 3.1 displays the marginal product of capital as a function of $K$.

Output is produced by firms. In period 1 , the capital stock $K_{1}$ is predetermined, and thus so is output, $Q_{1}$. To produce in period 2 firms must borrow capital in period 1 at the interest rate $r_{1}$. Physical capital depreciates at the rate $\delta$ between periods 1 and 2 . Therefore, the total cost of borrowing one unit of capital in period 1 is $r_{1}+\delta$. Profits in period $2, \Pi_{2}$, are then given by the difference between output and the rental cost of capital, that is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Pi_{2}=F\left(K_{2}\right)-\left(r_{1}+\delta\right) K_{2} . \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Firms choose $K_{2}$ so as to maximize profits, taking as given the interest rate $r_{1}$. Figure 3.2 displays the level of capital that maximizes profits. For values

Figure 3.2: Marginal product and marginal cost schedule

of $K$ below $K_{2}$, the marginal product of capital exceeds the rental cost $r_{1}+\delta$, thus, the firm can increase profits by renting an additional unit of capital. For values of $K$ greater than $K_{2}$, the rental cost of capital is greater than the marginal product of capital, so the firm can increase profits by reducing $K$. Therefore, the optimal level of capital, is the one at which the marginal product of capital equals the rental cost of capital, that is, ${ }^{1}$

$$
\begin{equation*}
F^{\prime}\left(K_{2}\right)=r_{1}+\delta \tag{3.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because the marginal product of capital is decreasing in the level of the capital stock, it follows from equation (3.2) that $K_{2}$ is a decreasing function of $r_{1}$. Intuitively, as $r_{1}$ goes up so does the rental cost of capital, so firms choose to hire fewer units of this factor input.

Investment in physical capital in period $1, I_{1}$, is defined as the difference between the capital stock in period 2 and the undepreciated part of the

[^6]capital stock in period $1,{ }^{2}$
\[

$$
\begin{equation*}
I_{1}=K_{2}-(1-\delta) K_{1} \tag{3.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

\]

Because $K_{1}$ is a predetermined variable in period 1 , it follows that, given $K_{1}$ and $\delta, I_{1}$ moves one for one with $K_{2}$. Thus, $I_{1}$ is a decreasing function of $r_{1}$. Figure 3.3 depicts the relationship between the interest rate and investment

Figure 3.3: The investment schedule, $I(r)$

demand in period 1 , holding constant $K_{1}$ and $\delta$.
In period 1 , profits are given by the difference between output, $F\left(K_{1}\right)$, and the rental cost of capital, $\left(r_{0}+\delta\right) K_{1}$, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Pi_{1}=F\left(K_{1}\right)-\left(r_{0}+\delta\right) K_{1}, \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

As we mentioned above, the initial capital stock $K_{1}$ is given. Therefore, period 1 profits are also given.

[^7]
### 3.1.2 Households

Consider now the behavior of households. At the beginning of period 1 , the household is endowed with $W_{0}$ units of interest bearing wealth. The rate of return on wealth is given by $r_{0}$. Thus, interest income is given by $r_{0} W_{0}$. In addition, the household is the owner of the firm and thus receives the firm's profits, $\Pi_{1}$. Therefore, total household income in period 1 equals $r_{0} W_{0}+\Pi_{1}$. As in the endowment economy, the household uses its income for consumption and additions to the stock of wealth. The budget constraints of the household in period 1 is then given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{1}+\left(W_{1}-W_{0}\right)=r_{0} W_{0}+\Pi_{1} \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similarly, the household's budget constraint in period 2 takes the form:

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{2}+\left(W_{2}-W_{1}\right)=r_{1} W_{1}+\Pi_{2}, \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $W_{2}$ denotes the stock of wealth the household chooses to hold at the end of period 2. Because period 2 is the last period of life, the household will not want to hold any positive amount of assets maturing after that period. Consequently, the household will always find it optimal to choose $W_{2} \leq 0$. At the same time, the household is not allowed to end period 2 with unpaid debts (the no-Ponzi-game condition), so that $W_{2} \geq 0$. Therefore, household's wealth at the end of period 2 must be equal to zero:

$$
W_{2}=0 .
$$

Using this expression, the budget constraint (3.6) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{2}=\left(1+r_{1}\right) W_{1}+\Pi_{2} . \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

Combining (3.5) and (3.7) to eliminate $W_{1}$ yields the following intertemporal budget constraint of the household:

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{1}+\frac{C_{2}}{1+r_{1}}=\left(1+r_{0}\right) W_{0}+\Pi_{1}+\frac{\Pi_{2}}{1+r_{1}} \tag{3.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression is similar to the intertemporal budget constraint corresponding to the endowment economy, equation (2.4), with the only difference that the present discounted value of lifetime endowments is replaced by the present discounted value of profits. As in the endowment economy, households derive utility from consumption in periods 1 and 2 . Their preferences
are described by the utility function (2.5), which we reproduce here for convenience:

$$
U\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right) .
$$

The household chooses $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ so as to maximize the utility function subject to the intertemporal budget constraint (3.8) taking as given $\Pi_{1}, \Pi_{2}$, $\left(1+r_{0}\right) W_{0}$, and $r_{1}$. The household's maximization problem is identical to the one we discussed in the endowment economy. In particular, at the optimal consumption basket, the indifference curve is tangent to the intertemporal budget constraint. That is, the slope of the indifference curve is equal to $-\left(1+r_{1}\right)$.

Before studying the determination of the current account, it is instructive to analyze a closed economy, that is, an economy in which agents do not have access to international financial markets, so that the current account is always zero.

### 3.1.3 Equilibrium in a closed economy

In a closed economy, agents do not have access to the world capital market. As a consequence, the household's wealth must be held in the form of claims to domestic capital, that is

$$
W_{0}=K_{1}
$$

and

$$
W_{1}=K_{2} .
$$

Replacing $\Pi_{1}$ with (3.4), $\Pi_{2}$ with (3.1), $F\left(K_{1}\right)$ with $Q_{1}$, and $F\left(K_{2}\right)$ with $Q_{2}$, equations (3.5) and (3.7) can be written as:

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{1}=C_{1}+K_{2}-(1-\delta) K_{1} \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{2}=C_{2}-(1-\delta) K_{2} \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

The first of these expressions says that output in period $1, Q_{1}$, must be allocated to consumption, $C_{1}$, and investment, $K_{2}-(1-\delta) K_{1}$. The second equation has a similar interpretation. Note that because the world ends after period 2 , in that period the household chooses to consume the entire undepreciated stock of capital, $(1-\delta) K_{2}$, so that investment is negative and equal to $-(1-\delta) K_{2}$. Combining (3.9) and (3.10) and using the fact that $Q_{2}=F\left(K_{2}\right)$ yields the following equilibrium resource constraint of the economy, also known as the production possibility frontier (PPF):

$$
C_{2}=F\left(Q_{1}+(1-\delta) K_{1}-C_{1}\right)+(1-\delta)\left[Q_{1}+(1-\delta) K_{1}-C_{1}\right]
$$

The PPF simplifies a great deal when the depreciation rate is assumed to be 100 percent $(\delta=1)$. In this case we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{2}=F\left(Q_{1}-C_{1}\right) \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Figure 3.4 depicts this production possibility frontier in the space $\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$.

Figure 3.4: The production possibility frontier: $C_{2}=F\left(Q_{1}-C_{1}\right)$


Because the production function is increasing and concave, the PPF is downward sloping and concave toward the origin. If in period 1 the household chooses to carry no capital into the second period by allocating the entire output to consumption $\left(C_{1}=Q_{1}\right)$, then output in period 2 is nil (point A in the figure). The maximum possible consumption in period 2 can be obtained by setting consumption equal to zero in period $1\left(C_{1}=0\right)$ and using output to accumulate capital (point B in the figure). The slope of the PPF is $-F^{\prime}\left(Q_{1}-C_{1}\right)$.

Which point on the PPF will be chosen in equilibrium, depends on the household's preferences. Figure 3.5 depicts the PPF together with the representative household's indifference curve that is tangent to the PPF. The point of tangency (point C in the figure) represents the equilibrium allocation. At point C, the slope of the indifference curve is equal to the slope of the PPF. From the firm's optimal choice of capital (equation (3.2)) we know

Figure 3.5: Equilibrium in the model with production: the closed economy case

that the marginal product of capital, $F^{\prime}\left(K_{2}\right)$, must equal the rental rate of capital, $r_{1}+\delta$. In the special case of a 100 percent depreciation rate, this condition becomes $F^{\prime}\left(K_{2}\right)=1+r_{1}$. This means that in equilibrium one plus the interest rate is given by (minus) the slope of the PPF at the point of tangency with the household's indifference curve. The important point to note is that in a closed economy the interest rate is determined by domestic factors such as preferences, technologies, and endowments. The interest rate prevailing in the closed economy will in general be different from the world interest rate. Another important point to keep in mind is that in the closed economy savings must always equal investment. To see this, note that in the closed economy savings in period $1, S_{1}$, equals output in period 1 minus consumption in period 1 , that is,

$$
S_{1}=Q_{1}-C_{1} .
$$

Recall that investment in period 1 is given by $I_{1}=K_{2}-(1-\delta) K_{1}$. Comparing this expression with (3.9) we have that

$$
I_{1}=Q_{1}-C_{1}
$$

Thus,

$$
S_{1}=I_{1}
$$

The current account is equal to the difference between savings and investment (see equation (1.10)). Therefore, in a closed economy the current account is always equal to zero. These differences between the open and the closed economies are reflected in the way in which each type of economy adjusts to shocks.

## Adjustment to a temporary output shock

Consider a negative transitory shock (such as a natural disaster) that destroys part of output in period 1. In the open economy, households will smooth consumption by borrowing in the international capital market at a constant interest rate, thus running a current account deficit in period 1. In the closed economy, as in the open economy, households desire to borrow against future income in order to smooth consumption. However, in the closed economy, access to international financial markets is precluded. At the same time, the increase in the interest rate has a negative effect on investment in physical capital. The reduction in investment frees up some resources that are used for consumption in period 1 preventing consumption from falling by as much as output.

Figure 3.6 illustrates the adjustment of the closed economy to a decline in output in period 1 from $Q_{1}^{0}$ to $Q_{1}^{1}<Q_{1}^{0}$. The economy is initially at point $A$; consumption in period 1 is $C_{1}^{0}$ and consumption in period 2 is $C_{2}^{0}$. The equilibrium interest rate is given by the slope of the PPF and the indifference curve at point $A$. It is clear from (3.11) that the decline in output in period 1 produces a parallel shift in the PPF to the left. For example, the distance between points $B$, on the new PPF, and $A$, on the old PPF, is equal to the decline in output in period $1, Q_{1}^{0}-Q_{1}^{1}$. Also, at point $B$, the slope of the new PPF is the same as the slope of the old PPF at point $A$. Where on the new PPF the equilibrium will be located depends on the shape of the indifference curves. Suppose that at every point on the horizontal segment connecting $A$ and $C_{2}^{0}$, the indifference curves are steeper than at point $A$. Also, assume that at every point on the vertical segment connecting $A$ with $C_{1}^{0}$ the indifference curves are flatter than at point $A$. When this property of the indifference curves is satisfied, $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ are said to be normal goods. In addition, because the PPF is strictly concave, as one moves on the PPF from point B to point C, the PPF becomes steeper. Therefore, the indifference curve that crosses point $B$ is, at that point, steeper than the new PPF. Also, the indifference curve that crosses point $C$ is, at that point, flatter than

Figure 3.6: Adjustment to a temporary decline in output in the closed economy

the new PPF. As a result, the new PPF will be tangent to an indifference curve at a point located between points $B$ and $C$. In the figure, the new equilibrium is given by point D . At the new equilibrium, consumption in period 1 is $C_{1}^{1}$ and consumption in period 2 is $C_{2}^{1}$. Note that consumption in period 1 falls ( $C_{1}^{1}<C_{1}^{0}$ ) but by less than the decline in output (the new equilibrium is located to the right of point $B$ ). Because output must equal the sum of consumption and investment, the fact that consumption falls by less than output means that investment falls in period 1. At point D , the PPF is steeper than at point B. This means that the negative output shock has induced an increase in the interest rate. Summing up, the effects of a decline in output in period 1 in the closed production economy are: (a) a decline in consumption in period 1 that is less than the decline in output; (b) a decline in savings that is matched by a decline in investment of equal magnitude; and (c) an increase in the interest rate.

We turn next to the analysis of current account determination in a production economy that has access to the world capital market.

### 3.1.4 Equilibrium in an open economy

In a small open economy households and firms can borrow and lend at an exogenously given world interest rate, which we denote by $r^{*}$. Therefore, the interest rate prevailing in the small open economy has to be equal to the world interest rate, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{1}=r^{*} \tag{3.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Also, in an open economy, households are not constrained to hold their wealth in the form of domestic capital. In addition to domestic capital, households can hold foreign assets, which are denoted by $B^{*}$. Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
W_{0}=K_{1}+B_{0}^{*} \tag{3.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
W_{1}=K_{2}+B_{1}^{*} .
$$

Consider first the optimal investment choice of a domestic firm. Substituting the equilibrium condition $r_{1}=r^{*}$ into equation (3.2) yields the following equilibrium condition determining the capital stock in period 2 , which we denote by $K_{2}^{*}$ :

$$
\begin{equation*}
F^{\prime}\left(K_{2}^{*}\right)=r^{*}+\delta \tag{3.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

This equation implies that the capital stock in period 2 depends only on the world interest rate and the rate of depreciation. Because the marginal product of capital is decreasing in $K_{2}$, it follows that $K_{2}^{*}$ is a decreasing function of $r^{*}$. Recall that investment in period 1 is given by $I_{1}=K_{2}-(1-$ $\delta) K_{1}$. The fact that $K_{1}$ is a predetermined variable in period 1 implies that the equilibrium level of investment in period $1, I_{1}^{*}$, is a decreasing function of $r^{*}$. This result marks an important difference between the open and the closed economies. In both economies, investment is a negative function of the interest rate $r_{1}$. However, in the closed economy, $r_{1}$ depends on preferences and the level of domestic wealth, whereas in the small open economy, $r_{1}$ equals $r^{*}$, which is independent of domestic preferences and wealth. Figure 3.7 illustrates the determination of investment in period 1 in the small open economy.

The fact that $K_{2}$ is a function of $r^{*}$ alone implies that the firm's profits in period 2 are also a function of $r^{*}$ alone. Specifically, using the equilibrium condition $r_{1}=r^{*}$ in (3.1) yields,

$$
\Pi_{2}^{*}=F\left(K_{2}^{*}\right)-\left(r^{*}+\delta\right) K_{2}^{*}
$$

Figure 3.7: The equilibrium level of investment, $I_{1}^{*}$


For simplicity, we assume, as in the case of the closed economy, that $\delta=1 .{ }^{3}$ Then, profits can be written as,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Pi_{2}^{*}=F\left(K_{2}^{*}\right)-\left(1+r^{*}\right) K_{2}^{*} . \tag{3.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Profits in period 1 are pre-determined and equal to

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Pi_{1}=Q_{1}-\left(1+r_{0}\right) K_{1}, \tag{3.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $Q_{1} \equiv F\left(K_{1}\right)$.
We are now ready to derive the equilibrium resource constraint of the small open production economy. Using the equilibrium conditions (3.12), (3.13), (3.15), and (3.16) to eliminate $r_{1}, W_{0}, \Pi_{2}^{*}$, and $\Pi_{1}$, respectively, from the intertemporal budget constraint of the household, equation (3.8), and

[^8]assuming for simplicity that $B_{0}^{*}=0$, we get, after rearranging terms, ${ }^{4}$
$$
C_{2}=\left(1+r^{*}\right)\left(Q_{1}-K_{2}^{*}-C_{1}\right)+F\left(K_{2}^{*}\right)
$$

This resource constraint states that in period 2 households can consume whatever they produce in that period, $F\left(K_{2}^{*}\right)$, plus the amount of foreign assets purchased in period 1 including interest. The amount of foreign assets purchased in period 1 is given by the difference between output in period 1 , $Q_{1}$, and domestic absorption, $K_{2}^{*}+C_{1}$. The resource constraint describes a linear relationship between $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ with a slope of $-\left(1+r^{*}\right)$. Figure 3.8 plots this relationship in the plane $\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)$. Clearly, if $Q_{1}-K_{2}^{*}>0$, the

Figure 3.8: Equilibrium in the production economy: the small open economy case

allocation $C_{1}=Q_{1}-K_{2}^{*}$ and $C_{2}=F\left(K_{2}^{*}\right)$ (point B ) is feasible. This allocation corresponds to a situation in which in period 1 the sum of consumption and investment is equal to output, so that the household's net foreign asset holdings in period 1 are exactly equal to zero. This means that point B would also have been attainable in the closed economy. In other words, point

[^9]B belongs to the production possibility frontier shown in figure 3.8. As we deduced before, the slope of the PPF is given by $-F^{\prime}\left(K_{2}\right)$, so that at point B, the slope of the PPF is given by $-F^{\prime}\left(K_{2}^{*}\right)$, which, by equation (3.14) equals $-\left(1+r^{*}\right)$.

Note that for any pair ( $C_{1}, C_{2}$ ) lying on the PPF, one can always find another allocation $\left(C_{1}^{\prime}, C_{2}^{\prime}\right)$ on the resource constraint of the small open economy such that $C_{1}^{\prime} \geq C_{1}$ and $C_{2}^{\prime} \geq C_{2}$. Because the PPF is the resource constraint of the closed economy, it follows that households are better off in the open economy than in the closed economy. We conclude that the imposition of international capital controls (i.e., restrictions to borrowing or lending from the rest of the world) is welfare decreasing in our model.

Consumption in each of the two periods is determined by the tangency of the resource constraint with an indifference curve (point A in figure 3.8). In the figure, the trade balance in period 1 is given by minus the distance between $C_{1}^{*}$ and $Q_{1}-K_{2}^{*}$, thus $T B_{1}$ is negative. Because $B_{0}^{*}$ is assumed to be zero, net investment income in period 1 is zero, which implies that the current account in period 1 is equal to the trade balance in period 1. Saving in period $1, S_{1}$, is given by the distance between $Q_{1}$ and $C_{1}^{*}$. Note that in figure 3.8 the current account is in deficit even though saving is positive. This is because investment in physical capital, given by the distance between $Q_{1}$ and $Q_{1}-K_{2}^{*}$, exceeds savings.

### 3.2 Current account adjustment to output and world-interest-rate shocks

### 3.2.1 A temporary output shock

Suppose that due to, for example, a negative productivity shock output declines in period 1. Specifically, assume that $Q_{1}^{0}$ falls to $Q_{1}^{1}$. Figure 3.9 describes the situation. Before the shock, consumption in periods 1 and 2 are $C_{1}^{0}$ and $C_{2}^{0}$ (point A), and output in period 2 is $F\left(K_{2}^{*}\right)$ (point B). When the shock hits the economy, the production possibility frontier shifts to the left in a parallel fashion. Because the economy under consideration is small, the world interest rate, $r^{*}$, is unaffected by the temporary output shock, and thus both investment in period $1, I_{1}^{*}=K_{2}^{*}$, and output in period 2, $F\left(K_{2}^{*}\right)$, are unchanged. The slope of the new PPF at $\left(Q_{1}^{1}-K_{2}^{*}, F\left(K_{2}^{*}\right)\right)$ (point $\left.\mathrm{B}^{\prime}\right)$ is $-\left(1+r^{*}\right)$. Because $r^{*}$ is unchanged, the slope of the new resource constraint continuous to be $-\left(1+r^{*}\right)$. This means that the new resource constraint is tangent to the new production possibility frontier at

Figure 3.9: The effect of a temporary output decline in the small-open economy with production

point $\mathrm{B}^{\prime}$. If consumption in both periods are normal goods, then $C_{1}$ will decline by less than the decline in output (point $\mathrm{A}^{\prime}$ ). The fact that $C_{1}$ falls by less than $Q_{1}$ means that savings in period 1 fall. The current account in period 1 is given by the difference between savings and investment. Since investment is unchanged and savings fall, the current account deteriorates. In period 1, the trade balance equals the current account (recall that $B_{0}^{*}=0$ by assumption). So, the trade balance, like the current account, deteriorates in period 1.

The adjustment in the current account to a temporary output shock in the production economy considered here is qualitatively equivalent to the adjustment in the endowment economy studied in chapter 2 . This is because investment is unaffected so that, as in the endowment economy, the response of savings determines the behavior of the current account. The intuition behind this result is the same as in the endowment economy: the output shock is transitory, so agents choose to smooth consumption by borrowing abroad (i.e., by dissaving). The economy enters period 2 with a larger foreign debt, whose repayment requires a trade balance surplus. Because neither investment nor output in period 2 are changed by the output shock, the trade balance surplus must be brought about through a reduction in $C_{2}$.

### 3.2.2 A world-interest-rate shock

Consider now a decrease in the world interest rate from $r^{*}$ to $r^{* \prime}<r^{*}$. For simplicity, let us assume that before the shock, the current account balance is zero. This equilibrium is given by point A in figure 3.10. In response to the decline in the interest rate, the resource constraint becomes flatter and is tangent to the PPF at point $\mathrm{A}^{\prime}$, located northwest of point A. The lower interest rate induces an increase in investment in period 1. Consider next the effect on consumption. By the substitution effect $C_{1}$ tends to increase. In addition, households experience a positive income effect originated in the fact that the lower interest rate increases profits in period $2, \Pi_{2}$. This positive income effect reinforces the substitution effect on $C_{1}$. Thus, in period 1 consumption increases (point $\mathrm{A}^{\prime \prime}$ ) and savings fall. The fact that investment increases and savings fall implies that the current account and the trade balance deteriorate (recall that $C A_{1}=S_{1}-I_{1}$ and that $B_{0}^{*}=0$ ).

As in the endowment economy, in the production economy the decline in the world interest rate generates a deterioration in the trade balance and the current account. However, in the production economy the decline in the current account is likely to be larger because of the increase in investment an element absent in the endowment economy.

Figure 3.10: A decline in the world interest rate from $r^{*}$ to $r^{* \prime}$


## Chapter 4

## External Adjustment in Small and Large Economies

Chapters 2 and 3 provide the microfundations for savings and investment behavior. This chapter takes stock of those results by condensing them in a convenient, user-friendly, synthetic apparatus. The resulting framework provides a simple graphical toolkit to study the determination of savings, investment, and the current account at the aggregate level.

Figure 4.1 summarizes the results obtained thus far in chapters 2 and

Figure 4.1: Savings, investment and the current account


3. Panel (a) plots the investment and saving schedules. The investment schedule, $I\left(r_{1}\right)$, is the same as the one shown in figure 3.3. It describes
a negative relation between the level of investment and the interest rate resulting from the profit-maximizing investment choice of firms (see equation (3.2)). The schedule is downward sloping because an increase in the interest rate raises the rental cost of capital thus inducing a decline in the demand for equipment, structures, etc..

The saving schedule, $S\left(r_{1}, Q_{1}\right)$, relates savings to the interest rate and output in period 1 . Savings are increasing in both the interest rate and output. An increase in the interest rate affects savings through three channels: first, it induces an increase in savings as agents substitute future for current consumption. This is called the substitution effect. Second, an increase in the interest rate affects savings through an income effect. If the country is a net foreign debtor, an increase in the interest rate makes its residents poorer and induces them to cut consumption. In this case, the income effect reinforces the substitution effect. However, if the country is a net creditor, then the increase in the interest rate makes households richer, allowing them to consume more and save less. In this case the income effect goes against the substitution effect. Third, an increase in the interest rate has a positive effect on savings because it lowers income from profit in period $2\left(\Pi_{2}\right)$. We will assume that the first and third effects combined are stronger than the second one, so that savings is an increasing function of the interest rate. In section 3.2.1 we analyzed the effects of temporary output shocks in the context of a two-period economy and derived the result that savings are increasing in period 1's output, $Q_{1}$. This result arises because an increase in $Q_{1}$ represents, holding other things constant, a temporary increase in income, which induces households to increase consumption in both periods. Thus, households save more in period 1 in order to consume more in period 2 as well. ${ }^{1}$

Having established the way in which the interest rate and current output affect savings and investment, it is easy to determine the relationship between these two variables and the current account. This is because the current account is given by the difference between savings and investment $\left(C A_{1}=S_{1}-I_{1}\right)$. Panel (b) of figure 4.1 illustrates this relationship. Suppose that the interest rate is $r^{a}$. Then savings exceed investment, which implies that the current account is in surplus. If the interest rate is equal to $r^{c}$, then investment equals savings and the current account is zero. Note that $r_{c}$ is the interest rate that would prevail in a closed economy, that is, in

[^10]an economy that does not have access to international capital markets. For interest rates below $r^{c}$, such as $r^{b}$, investment is larger than savings so that the country runs a current account deficit. Therefore, as shown in panel (b), the current account is an increasing function of the interest rate.

With the help of this graphical apparatus, it is now straightforward to analyze the effects of various shocks on investment, savings, and the current account. We begin by revisiting the effects of world interest rate shocks. Suppose a small open economy that initially faces the world interest rate $r^{* o}$ as shown in figure 4.2. At that interest rate, the country runs a current

Figure 4.2: Current account adjustment to an increase in the world interest rate

account deficit equal to $C A^{0}$. Suppose now that the world interest rate rises to $r^{* 1}>r^{* o}$. The higher world interest rate encourages domestic saving and forces firms to reduce investment in physical capital. As a result, the current account deficit declines from $C A^{0}$ to $C A^{1}$.

Consider next the effects of a temporary positive income shock, that is, an increase in $Q_{1}$. We illustrate the effects of this shock in figure 4.3. Suppose that $Q_{1}$ is initially equal to $Q_{1}^{0}$. At the world interest rate $r^{*}$, savings are equal to $S_{1}^{0}$, investment is equal to $I_{1}^{0}$, and the current account is $C A_{1}^{0}=S_{1}^{0}-I_{1}^{0}$. Suppose now that $Q_{1}$ increases to $Q_{1}^{1}>Q_{1}^{0}$. This increase in $Q_{1}$ shifts the saving schedule to the right because households, in an effort to smooth consumption over time, save part of the increase in income. On the other hand, the investment schedule does not move because investment is not affected by current income. The rightward shift in the savings schedule

Figure 4.3: Current account adjustment to a temporary increase in output


implies that at any given interest rate the difference between savings and investment is larger than before the increase in income. As a result, the current account schedule shifts to the right. Given the world interest rate, the current account increases from $C A_{1}^{0}$ to $C A_{1}^{1}$. Thus, a temporary increase in income produces an increase in savings, and an improvement in the current account balance while leaving investment unchanged. Note that if the economy was closed, the current account would be zero before and after the income shock, and the interest rate would fall from $r_{c}^{0}$ to $r_{c}^{1}$. This decline in the interest rate would induce an expansion in investment. Because in the closed economy savings are always equal to investment, savings would also increase.

### 4.1 An investment surge

Suppose that in period 1 agents learn that in period 2 the productivity of capital will increase. For example, suppose that the production function in period 2 was initially given by $F\left(K_{2}\right)=\sqrt{K_{2}}$ and that due to a technological advancement it changes to $\tilde{F}\left(K_{2}\right)=2 \sqrt{K_{2}}$. Another example of an investment surge is given by an expected increase in the price of exports. In Norway, for instance, the oil price increase of 1973 unleashed an investment boom of around $10 \%$ of GDP. In response to this news, firms will choose to increase investment in period 1 for any given level of the interest rate. This scenario is illustrated in figure 4.4. Initially, the investment schedule

Figure 4.4: An investment surge

is $I^{0}\left(r_{1}\right)$ and the saving schedule is $S^{0}\left(r_{1}, Q_{1}\right)$. Given the world interest rate $r^{*}$, investment is $I_{1}^{0}$ and savings is $S_{1}^{0}$. As shown in panel (b), the current account schedule is $C A^{0}\left(r_{1}, Q_{1}\right)$, and the equilibrium current account balance is $C A_{1}^{0}$. The news of the future productivity increase shifts the investment schedule to the right to $I^{1}\left(r_{1}\right)$, and the new equilibrium level of investment is $I_{1}^{1}$, which is higher than $I_{1}^{0}$. The expected increase in productivity might also affect current saving through its effect on expected future income. Specifically, in period 2, firms will generate higher profits which represent a positive income effect for households who are the owners of such firms. Households will take advantage of the expected increase in profits by increasing consumption in period 1 , thus cutting savings. Therefore, the savings schedule shifts to the left to $S^{1}\left(r_{1}, Q_{1}\right)$ and the equilibrium level of savings falls from $S_{1}^{0}$ to $S_{1}^{1}$. With this shifts in the investment and savings schedules it follows that, for any given interest rate, the current account is lower. That is, the current account schedule shifts to the left to $C A^{1}\left(r_{1}, Q_{1}\right)$. Given the world interest rate $r^{*}$, the current account deteriorates from $C A_{1}^{0}$ to $C A_{1}^{1}$. Note that if the economy was closed, the investment surge would trigger a rise in the domestic interest rate from $r_{c}^{0}$ to $r_{c}^{1}$ and thus investment would increase by less than in the open economy.

### 4.2 Country risk premium

In practice, the interest rate that developing countries face on their international loans is larger than the one developed countries charge to each other. This interest rate differential is called the country risk premium, and we denote it by $p$. Figure 4.5 illustrates the situation of a small open econ-

Figure 4.5: Current account determination in the presence of a constant risk premium

omy facing a country risk premium. The premium is charged only when the country is a debtor to the rest of the world. Given our assumption of zero initial net foreign assets, the risk premium applies when the current account is in deficit. Thus, the interest rate faced by the small open economy is $r^{*}$ when $C A>0$ and $r^{*}+p>r^{*}$ when $C A<0$. Given the world interest rate $r^{*}$ and the country risk premium $p$, the country runs a current account deficit equal to $C A^{0}$ (see the figure). Note that the current account deficit is smaller than the one that would obtain if the country faced no risk premium. Thus, if the current account is negative, an increase in the risk premium reduces the current account deficit in exactly the same way as an increase in the interest rate.

A more realistic specification for the interest rate faced by developing countries is one in which the country risk premium is an increasing function of the country's net foreign debt. Given our assumption that the initial net foreign asset position is zero, the country's foreign debt at the end of period 1 is given by its current account deficit. Thus, we can represent the
country risk premium as an increasing function of the current account deficit, $p(-C A)$ (see figure 4.6). Consider now the response of the current account

Figure 4.6: Current account determination in the presence of an increasing risk premium

to an investment surge like the one discussed in section 4.1. In response to the positive investment shock, the current account schedule shifts to the left from $C A^{0}\left(r_{1}, Q_{1}\right)$ to $C A^{1}\left(r_{1}, Q_{1}\right)$. As a result, the current account deteriorates from $C A_{1}^{0}$ to $C A_{1}^{1}$ and the interest rate at which the country can borrow internationally increases from $r^{*}+p\left(-C A_{1}^{0}\right)$ to $r^{*}+p\left(-C A_{1}^{1}\right)$. The resulting deterioration in the current account is, however, smaller than the one that would have taken place had the country risk premium remained constant.

### 4.3 Large open economy

Thus far, we have considered current account determination in a small open economy. We now turn to the determination of the current account in a large open economy like the United States. Let's divide the world into two regions, the United States and the rest of the world. Because a U.S. current account deficit represents a current account surplus of the rest of the world and conversely, a U.S. current account surplus is a current account deficit of the rest of the world, it follows that the world current account must always be equal to zero; that is,

$$
C A^{U S}+C A^{R W}=0
$$

where $C A^{U S}$ and $C A^{R W}$ denote, respectively, the current account balances of the United States and the rest of the world.

Figure 4.7 shows the current account schedules of the U.S. and that of

Figure 4.7: Current account determination in a large open economy

the rest of the world. The innovation in the graph is that the current account of the rest of the world is measured from right to left, so that to the left of 0 the rest of the world has a CA surplus and the U.S. a CA deficit, whereas to the right of 0 , the U.S. runs a CA surplus and the rest of the world a CA deficit. Equilibrium in the world capital markets is given by the intersection of $C A^{U S}$ and $C A^{R W}$. In the figure, the equilibrium is given by point A , at which the U.S. runs a current account deficit and the rest of the world a current account surplus. Consider now an investment surge in the U.S. that shifts the $C A^{U S}$ schedule to the left to $C A^{U S^{\prime}}$. The new equilibrium is given by point B , at which the world interest rate is higher, the US runs a larger CA deficit, and the rest of the world a larger CA surplus. Note that because the U.S. is a large open economy, the investment surge produces a large increase in the demand for loans, which drives world interest rates up. As a result, the deterioration in the US current account is not as pronounced as the one that would have resulted if the interest rate had remained unchanged (point C in the figure). Note further that the increase in the U.S. interest rate is smaller than the one that would have occurred if the US economy was closed (given by the distance between $\mathrm{D}^{\prime}$ and D ).

## Chapter 5

## Fiscal Deficits and the Current Account

### 5.1 The Twin Deficits of the 1980s

The early 1980s were a turning point for the U.S. current account. Until 1982, the U.S. run current account surpluses. After 1982, a string of large current account deficits led to a substantial deterioration of the country's net international investment position (see figure 1.2). Indeed, the US turned from a net foreign creditor in 1980 to the world's largest foreign debtor by the end of the decade. As dramatic as it may seem, the current account experience of the 1980s is not historically unprecedented. Throughout the 19th century the United States was a net foreign debtor country. It was only after the first World War that the U.S. became a net foreign creditor.

Nevertheless, the question of what factors are responsible for the enormous current account deficits that have been taking place since the early 1980s generates a lot of attention, and a number of alternative explanations have been offered.

### 5.2 Explanations of the current account deficits of the 1980s

One view of what caused the current account deficits of the 1980s is that in those years the rest of the world wanted to send their savings to the U.S., so the U.S. had to run a current account deficit. This view is illustrated in figure 5.1. The increase in the rest of the world's demand for U.S. assets is

Figure 5.1: The U.S. current account in the 1980s: view 1

reflected in a shift to the left of the current account schedule of the rest of the world. As a result, in the new equilibrium position, the current account in the U.S. deteriorates from $C A^{U S^{0}}$ to $C A^{U S^{1}}$ and the world interest rate falls from $r^{* 0}$ to $r^{* 1}$.

What could have triggered such an increase in the desire of the rest of the world to redirect savings to the U.S.? A number of explanations have been offered. First, in the early 1980s, the U.S. was perceived as a "safe heaven," that is, as a safer place to invest. This perception triggered an increase in the supply of foreign lending. For example, it has been argued that international investors were increasingly willing to hold U.S. assets due to instability in Latin America; in the jargon of that time, the U.S. was the recipient of the "capital flight" from Latin America. Second, as a consequence of the debt crisis of the early 1980s, international credit dried up, forcing developing countries, particularly in Latin America, to reduce current account deficits. Third, financial deregulation in several countries made it easier for foreign investors to hold U.S. assets. An example is Japan in the late 1980s. ${ }^{1}$

A second view of what caused the U.S. current account deficit is that in the 1980s the U.S. wanted to save less and spend more at any level of

[^11]Figure 5.2: The U.S. current account in the 1980s: view 2

the interest rate. As a result, the American economy had to draw savings from the rest of the world. Thus, U.S. foreign borrowing went up and the current account deteriorated. Figure 5.2 illustrates this view. As a result of the increase in desired spending relative to income in the U.S., the CA schedule for the U.S. shifts to the left, causing a deterioration in the U.S. current account from $C A^{U S^{0}}$ to $C A^{U S^{1}}$ and an increase in the world interest rate from $r^{* 0}$ to $r^{* 1}$. Under this view, the deterioration of the U.S. current account is the consequence of a decline in U.S. national savings or an increase in U.S. investment or a combination of the two.

Clearly, the two views have different implications for the behavior of the interest rate in the U.S. Under view 1, the interest rate falls as the foreign supply of savings increases, whereas under view 2 the interest rate rises as the U.S. demand for funds goes up. What does the data show? In the early 1980s, the U.S. experienced a big increase in real interest rates (see figure 5.3). The same pattern, although not so dramatic, arises in the rest of the world. This evidence seems to vindicate view 2 . We will therefore explore this view further.

As already mentioned, view 2 requires that either the U.S. saving schedule shifts to the left, or that the U.S. investment schedule shifts to the right or both (see figure 5.4). Before looking at actual data on U.S. savings and

Figure 5.3: Real interest rates in the United States 1970-1999


Source: Economic Report of the President, 2000. Note: The real interest rate is measured as the difference between the 3 -month Treasury bill rate and consumer price inflation. (Thus, this is an ex post real interest rate.)
investment a comment about national savings is in order. National savings is the sum of private sector savings, which we will denote by $S^{p}$, and government savings, which we will denote by $S^{g}$. Letting $S$ denote national savings, we have

$$
S=S^{p}+S^{g}
$$

Thus far we have analyzed a model economy without a public sector. In an economy without a government, national savings is simply equal to private savings, that is, $S=S^{p}$. However, in actual economies government savings accounts for a non-negligible fraction of national savings. To understand what happened to U.S. savings in the 1980s the distinction between private savings and government savings is important. With this comment in mind, let us now turn to the data. The evidence presented in figure 5.5 shows that there was a strong decline in public savings starting in the early 1980s and

Figure 5.4: View 2 requires shifts in the U.S. savings or investment schedules


Figure 5.5: U.S. Saving and Investment in Percent of GDP


Source: N. Fieleke, "The USA in Debt," in Dilip Das, International Finance, Routledge, 1993, chapter 27 (especially, table 27-11).
in private savings starting in the mid 1980s. The increase in the fiscal deficit in the early 1980s arose due to, among other factors, a tax reform, which reduced tax revenues, and an increase in defense spending. Fieleke (op. cit.) in his account of the U.S. current account deficit puts great emphasis on the fact that the decline in the current account balance is roughly equal to the decline in government savings (see Figure 27.2 of the Fieleke article). He therefore concludes that the increase in the fiscal deficit caused the decline in the current account. The story advocated by Fieleke that the increase in the government deficit, that is, a decline in government savings, shifted the U.S. savings schedule to the left is not necessarily correct because changes in fiscal policy that cause the fiscal deficit to increase may also induce offsetting increases in private savings, leaving total savings-and thus the current account-unchanged. In order to understand the relation between fiscal deficits and private savings, in the next section, we extend our theoretical model to incorporate the government.

### 5.3 The government sector in the open economy

Consider the two-period endowment economy studied in chapter 2, but assume the existence of a government that purchases goods $G_{1}$ and $G_{2}$ in periods 1 and 2 , respectively, and levies lump-sum taxes $T_{1}$ and $T_{2}$. In addition, assume that the government starts with initial financial assets in the amount of $B_{0}^{g}$. The government faces the following budget constraints in periods 1 and 2:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& G_{1}+\left(B_{1}^{g}-B_{0}^{g}\right)=r_{0} B_{0}^{g}+T_{1} \\
& G_{2}+\left(B_{2}^{g}-B_{1}^{g}\right)=r_{1} B_{1}^{g}+T_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $B_{1}^{g}$ and $B_{2}^{g}$ denote the amount of government asset holdings at the end of periods 1 and 2 , respectively. The left-hand side of the first constraint represents the government's outlays in period 1, which consist of government purchases of goods and purchases of financial assets. The right-hand side represents the government's sources of funds in period 1, namely, tax revenues and interest income on asset holdings. The budget constraint in period 2 has a similar interpretation.

Like households, the government is assumed to be subject to a no-Ponzigame constraint that prevents it from having debt outstanding at the end of period 2. This means that $B_{2}^{g}$ must be greater or equal to zero. At the same time, a benevolent government - that is, a government that cares about the welfare of its citizens-would not find it in its interest to end period 2 with
positive asset holdings. This is because the government will not be around in period 3 to spend the accumulated assets in ways that would benefit its constituents. This means that the government will always choose $B_{2}^{g}$ to be less than or equal to zero. The above two arguments imply that

$$
B_{2}^{g}=0 .
$$

Combining the above three expressions, we obtain the following intertemporal government budget constraint:

$$
\begin{equation*}
G_{1}+\frac{G_{2}}{1+r_{1}}=\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{g}+T_{1}+\frac{T_{2}}{1+r_{1}} \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

This constraint says that the present discounted value of government consumption (the left-hand side) must be equal to the present discounted value of tax revenues and initial asset holdings including interest (the right-hand side). Note that there exist many (in fact a continuum of) tax policies $T_{1}$ and $T_{2}$ that finance a given path of government consumption, $G_{1}$ and $G_{2}$, i.e., that satisfy the intertemporal budget constraint of the government given by (5.1). However, all other things equal, given taxes in one period, the above intertemporal constraint uniquely pins down taxes in the other period. In particular, a tax cut in period 1 must be offset by a tax increase in period 2. Similarly, an expected tax cut in period 2 must be accompanied by a tax increase in period 1 .

The household's budget constraints are similar to the ones we derived earlier in chapter 2 , but must be modified to reflect the fact that now households must pay taxes in each of the two periods. Specifically, the household's budget constraints in periods 1 and 2 are given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
& C_{1}+T_{1}+B_{1}^{p}-B_{0}^{p}=r_{0} B_{0}^{p}+Q_{1} \\
& C_{2}+T_{2}+B_{2}^{p}-B_{1}^{p}=r_{1} B_{1}^{p}+Q_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

We also impose the no-Ponzi-game condition

$$
B_{2}^{p}=0 .
$$

Combining these three constraints yields the following intertemporal budget constraint:

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{1}+\frac{C_{2}}{1+r_{1}}=\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{p}+Q_{1}-T_{1}+\frac{Q_{2}-T_{2}}{1+r_{1}} \tag{5.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression says that the present discounted value of lifetime consumption, the left-hand side, must equal the sum of initial wealth, $\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{p}$,
and the present discounted value of endowment income net of taxes, $\left(Q_{1}-\right.$ $\left.T_{1}\right)+\left(Q_{2}-T_{2}\right) /\left(1+r_{1}\right)$. Note that the only difference between the above intertemporal budget constraint and the one given in equation (2.4) is that now $Q_{i}-T_{i}$ takes the place of $Q_{i}$, for $i=1,2$.

As in the economy without a government, the assumption of a small open economy implies that in equilibrium the domestic interest rate must equal the world interest rate, $r^{*}$, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
r_{1}=r^{*} . \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

The country's net foreign asset position at the beginning of period 1 , which we denote by $B_{0}^{*}$, is given by the sum of private and public asset holdings, that is,

$$
B_{0}^{*}=B_{0}^{p}+B_{0}^{g}
$$

We will assume for simplicity that the country's initial net foreign asset position is zero:

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{0}^{*}=0 . \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Combining (5.1), (5.2), (5.3), and (5.4) yields,

$$
C_{1}+G_{1}+\frac{C_{2}+G_{2}}{1+r^{*}}=Q_{1}+\frac{Q_{2}}{1+r^{*}} .
$$

This intertemporal resource constraint represents the consumption possibility frontier of the economy. It has a clear economic interpretation. The left-hand side is the present discounted value of domestic absorption, which consists of private and government consumption in each period. ${ }^{2}$ The righthand side of the consumption possibility frontier is the present discounted value of domestic output. Thus, the consumption possibility frontier states that the present discounted value of domestic absorption must equal the present discounted value of domestic output.

Solving for $C_{2}$, the consumption possibility frontier can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{2}=\left(1+r^{*}\right)\left(Q_{1}-C_{1}-G_{1}\right)+Q_{2}-G_{2} . \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Figure 5.6 depicts the relationship between $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ implied by the consumption possibility frontier. It is a downward sloping line with slope equal to $-\left(1+r^{*}\right)$. Consumption in each period is determined by the tangency of the consumption possibility frontier with an indifference curve.

[^12]Figure 5.6: Optimal consumption choice


Note that neither $T_{1}$ nor $T_{2}$ appear in the consumption possibility frontier. This means that, given $G_{1}$ and $G_{2}$, any combination of taxes $T_{1}$ and $T_{2}$ satisfying the government's budget constraint (5.1) will be associated with the same private consumption levels in periods 1 and 2 .

### 5.4 Ricardian Equivalence

In order to understand the merits of the view that attributes the large current account deficits of the 1980s to fiscal deficits generated in part by the tax cuts implemented by the Reagan administration, we must determine how a reduction in taxes affects the current account in our model economy. Because the current account is the difference between national savings and investment, and because investment is by assumption nil in our endowment economy, it is sufficient to characterize the effect of tax cuts on national savings. ${ }^{3}$ As mentioned earlier, national savings equals the sum of government

[^13]savings and private savings.
Private savings in period 1 , which we denote by $S_{1}^{p}$, is defined as the difference between disposable income, given by domestic output plus interest on net bond holdings by the private sector minus taxes, and private consumption:
$$
S_{1}^{p}=Q_{1}+r_{0} B_{0}^{p}-T_{1}-C_{1} .
$$

Because, as we just showed, for a given time path of government purchases, private consumption is unaffected by changes in the timing of taxes and because $r_{0} B_{0}^{p}$ is predetermined in period 1 , it follows that changes in lumpsum taxes in period 1 induce changes in private savings of equal size and opposite sign:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta S_{1}^{p}=-\Delta T_{1} \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

The intuition behind this result is the following: Suppose, for example, that the government cuts lump-sum taxes in period 1 , keeping government purchases unchanged in both periods. This policy obliges the government to increase public debt by $\Delta T_{1}$ in period 1 . In order to service and retire this additional debt, in period 2 the government must raise taxes by $\left(1+r_{1}\right) \Delta T_{1}$. Rational households anticipate this future increase in taxes and therefore choose to save the current tax cut (rather than spend it in consumption goods) so as to be able to pay the higher taxes in period 2 without having to sacrifice consumption in that period. Put differently, a change in the timing of lump-sum taxes does no alter the household's lifetime wealth.

Government savings, also known as the secondary fiscal surplus, is defined as the difference between revenues (taxes plus interest on asset holdings) and government purchases. Formally,

$$
S_{1}^{g}=r_{0} B_{0}^{g}+T_{1}-G_{1} .
$$

When the secondary fiscal surplus is negative we say that the government is running a secondary fiscal deficit. The secondary fiscal surplus has two components: interest income on government asset holdings $\left(r_{0} B_{0}^{g}\right)$ and the primary fiscal surplus $\left(T_{1}-G_{1}\right)$. The primary fiscal surplus measures the difference between tax revenues and government expenditures. When the primary fiscal surplus is negative, that is, when government expenditures exceed tax revenues, we say that the government is running a primary deficit.

Given an exogenous path for government purchases and given the initial condition $r_{0} B_{0}^{g}$, any change in taxes in period 1 must be reflected one-for-one in a change in government saving, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Delta S_{1}^{g}=\Delta T_{1} \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

As we mentioned before, national saving, which we denote by $S$, is given by the the sum of private and government saving, that is, $S_{1}=S_{1}^{p}+S_{1}^{g}$,. Changes in national savings are thus equal to the sum of changes in private savings and changes in government savings,

$$
\Delta S_{1}=\Delta S_{1}^{p}+\Delta S_{1}^{g} .
$$

Combining this expression with equations (5.6) and (5.7), we have that

$$
\Delta S_{1}=-\Delta T_{1}+\Delta T_{1}=0
$$

This expression states that national savings is unaffected by the timing of lump-sum taxes. This is an important result in Macroeconomics. For this reason it has been given a special name: Ricardian Equivalence. ${ }^{4}$

Recalling that the current account is the difference between national saving and investment, it follows that the change in the current account in response to a change in taxes, holding constant government expenditure, is given by

$$
\Delta C A_{1}=\Delta S_{1}-\Delta I_{1} .
$$

Therefore, an increase in the fiscal deficit due to a decline in current lumpsum taxes (leaving current and expected future government spending unchanged) has no effect on the current account, that is,

$$
\Delta C A_{1}=0 .
$$

Clearly, because of Ricardian equivalence, a story of government deficits being caused by changes in the timing of lump-sum taxes implies a behavior of the current account that does not line up with the observed behavior of the U.S. current account deficits in the 1980s.

### 5.5 Then what was it?

What are other possible interpretations of the view according to which the large current account deficits of the 1980s were due to a decline in desired savings and/or an increase in desired U.S. spending? One is that the increase in the U.S. government deficit coincided by accident with a reduced desire for private savings for reasons other than the tax cut. Another possible interpretation is that the increase in the U.S. fiscal deficit of the 1980s was not

[^14]solely a deferral of taxes, but instead government purchases were increased temporarily, particularly military spending. In our model, an increase in government purchases in period 1 of $\Delta G_{1}$, with government purchases in period 2 unchanged, is equivalent to a temporary decline in output. In response to the increase in government spending, households will smooth consumption by reducing consumption spending in period 1 by less than the increase in government purchases $\left(\Delta C_{1}+\Delta G_{1}>0\right)$. Because neither output in period 1 nor investment in period 1 are affected by the increase in government purchases, the trade balance in period 1 , which is given by $Q_{1}-C_{1}-G_{1}-I_{1}$, deteriorates $\left(\Delta T B_{1}=-\Delta C_{1}-\Delta G_{1}<0\right)$. The current account, given by $r_{0} B_{0}^{*}+T B_{1}$, declines by the same amount as the trade balance ( $\Delta C A_{1}=\Delta T B_{1}$; recall that net investment income is predetermined in period 1). The key behind this result is that consumption falls by less than the increase in government purchases. The effect of the increase in government purchases on consumption is illustrated in figure 5.7. The initial

Figure 5.7: Adjustment to a temporary increase in government purchases

consumption allocation is point A . The increase in $G_{1}$ produces a parallel shift in the economy's resource constraint to the left by $\Delta G_{1}$. If consumption in both periods is normal, then both $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ decline. Therefore, the new optimal allocation, point B , is located southwest of point A. Clearly,

Table 5.1: U.S. military spending as a percentage of GNP: 1978-1987

| Year | Military <br> Spending <br> (\% of GNP) |
| :---: | :---: |
| $1978-79$ | $5.1-5.2$ |
| $1980-81$ | $5.4-5.5$ |
| $1982-84$ | $6.1-6.3$ |
| $1985-87$ | $6.7-6.9$ |

the decline in $C_{1}$ is less in absolute value than $\Delta G_{1}$.
Is this explanation empirically plausible? There exists evidence that government spending went up in the early 1980s due to an increase in national defense spending as a percentage of GNP. Table 5.1 indicates that military purchases increased by about $1.5 \%$ of GNP from 1978 to 1985. But according to our model, this increase in government purchases (if temporary) must be associated with a decline in consumption. Thus, the decline in national savings triggered by the Reagan military build up is at most $1.5 \%$ of GNP, which is too small to explain all of the observed decline in national savings of $3 \%$ of GNP that occurred during that period (see figure 5.5).

### 5.5.1 Failure of Ricardian Equivalence

A third possible interpretation of the view that the US external imbalances of the 1980s were the result of a decline in domestic savings is that Ricardian Equivalence may not be right. Three reasons why Ricardian Equivalence may fail to hold are that households are liquidity constrained, that the people that benefit from the tax cut are not the same that must pay for the future tax increase, and that taxes are not lump-sum.

### 5.5.2 Borrowing Constraints

Consider first the case of borrowing constraints. Suppose households have initial wealth equal to zero $\left(B_{0}^{p}=0\right)$ and that they are precluded from borrowing in financial markets, that is, they are constrained to choose $B_{1}^{p} \geq 0$. Assume further that neither firms nor the government are liquidity constrained, so that they can borrow at the world interest rate $r^{*}$. Figure 5.8 illustrates this case. Suppose that in the absence of borrowing constraints,

Figure 5.8: Adjustment to a temporary tax cut when households are liquidity constrained

the consumption allocation is given by point A , at which households in period 1 consume more than their after-tax income, that is, $C_{1}^{0}>Q_{1}-T_{1}$. This excess of consumption over disposable income is financed by borrowing in the financial market $\left(B_{1}^{p}<0\right)$. In this case the borrowing constraint is binding, and households are forced to choose the consumption allocation B , where $C_{1}=Q_{1}-T_{1}$. It is easy to see why, under these circumstances, a tax cut produces an increase in consumption and a deficit in the current account. The tax cut relaxes the household's borrowing constraint. The increase in consumption is given by the size of the tax cut $\left(\Delta C_{1}=-\Delta T_{1}\right)$, which in figure 5.8 is measured by the distance between the vertical lines L and $L^{\prime}$. The new consumption allocation is given by point $\mathrm{B}^{\prime}$, which lies on the economy's resource constraint and to the right of point B. Consumption in period 1 increases by the same amount as the tax cut. Because neither investment nor government purchases are affected by the tax cut, the trade balance and hence the current account deteriorate by the same amount as the increase in consumption. Thus, in the presence of borrowing constraints the increase in the fiscal deficit leads to a one-for-one increase in the current account deficit.

Can the presence of financial constraints per se explain the current account deficits of the 1980s as being a consequence of expansionary fiscal policy? The tax cut implemented during the Reagan administration amounted to about 3 percent of GDP. The observed deterioration in the current account during those years was also of about 3 percent of GDP. It is then clear that in order for the liquidity-constraint hypothesis alone to explain the behavior of the current account in the 1980s, it should be the case that $100 \%$ of the population must be borrowing constrained.

### 5.5.3 Intergenerational Effects

A second reason why Ricardian Equivalence could fail is that those who benefit from the tax cut are not the ones that pay for the tax increase later. To illustrate this idea, consider an endowment economy in which households live for only one period. Then, the budget constraint of the generation alive in period 1 is given by $C_{1}+T_{1}=Q_{1}$, and similarly, the budget constraint of the generation alive in period 2 is $C_{2}+T_{2}=Q_{2}$. Suppose that the government implements a tax cut in period 1 that is financed with a tax increase in period 2. Clearly, $\Delta C_{1}=-\Delta T_{1}$ and $\Delta C_{2}=-\Delta T_{2}$. Thus, the tax cut produces an increase in consumption in period 1 and a decrease in consumption in period 2 . As a result, the trade balance and the current account in period 1 decline one-for-one with the decline in taxes. The intuition for this result is that in response to a decline in taxes in period 1, the generation alive in period 1 does not increase savings in anticipation of the tax increase in period 2 because it will not be around when the tax increase is implemented. What percentage of the population must be 1-period lived in order for this hypothesis to be able to explain the observed $3 \%$ of GNP decline in the U.S. current account balance, given the $3 \%$ decline in government savings? Obviously, everybody must be 1-period lived.

### 5.5.4 Distortionary Taxation

Finally, Ricardian equivalence may also breakdown if taxes are not lump sum. Lump-sum taxes are those that do not depend on agents' decicions. In the economy described in section 5.3, households are taxed $T_{1}$ in period 1 and $T_{2}$ in period 2 regardless of their consumption, income, or savings. Thus, in that economy lump-sum taxes do not distort any of the decisions of the households. In reality, however, taxes are rarely lump sum. Rather, they are typically specified as a fraction of consumption, income, firms' profits etc. Thus, changes in tax rates will tend to distort consumption, savings, and
investment decisions. Suppose, for example, that the government levies a proportional tax on consumption, with a tax rate equal to $\tau_{1}$ in period 1 and $\tau_{2}$ in period 2 . Then the after-tax cost of consumption is $\left(1+\tau_{1}\right) C_{1}$ in period 1 and $\left(1+\tau_{2}\right) C_{2}$ in period 2 . In this case, the relative price of period- 1 consumption in terms of period-2 consumption faced by households is not simply $1+r_{1}$, as in the economy with lump-sum taxes, but $\left(1+r_{1}\right) \frac{1+\tau_{1}}{1+\tau_{2}}$. Suppose now that the goverment implements a reduction in the tax rate in period 1. By virtue of the intertemporal budget constraint of the government, the public expects, all other things equal, an increase in the consumption tax rate in period 2 . Thus, the relative price of current consumption in terms of future consumption falls. This change in the relative price of consumption induces households to substitute current for future consumption. Because firms are not being taxed, investment is not affected by the tax cut. As a result, the trade balance, given by $T B_{1}=Q_{1}-C_{1}-G_{1}-I_{1}$, and the current account, given by $C A_{1}=T B_{1}+r_{0} B_{0}^{*}$, both deteriorate by the same amount.

We conclude that if the current account deficit of the 1980s is to be explained by the fiscal imbalances of the Reagan administration, then this explanation will have to rely on a combination of an increase in government expenditure and multiple factors leading to the failure of Ricardian equivalence.

## Chapter 6

## International Capital Market Integration

In the past two decades, a number of events around the world have made the assumption of free capital mobility increasingly realistic. Among the developments that have contributed to increased capital mobility are:

- The breakdown of the Bretton-Woods System of fixed exchange rates in 1972 allowed, as a byproduct, the removal of capital controls in some European countries, particularly in Germany in the mid 1970s.
- The high inflation rates observed in the 1970s together with the Federal Reserve's regulation $Q$ which placed a ceiling on the interest rate that US banks could pay on time deposits, led to fast growth of eurocurrency markets. A eurocurrency deposit is a foreign currency deposit. For example, a Eurodollar deposit is a dollar deposit outside the United States (e.g., a dollar deposit in London). A yen deposit at a bank in Singapore is called a Euro yen deposit and the interest rate on such deposit is called the Euro yen rate (i.e., the interest rate on yen deposits outside Japan). The biggest market place for Eurocurrency deposits is London.
- Technological advances in information processing made it easier to watch several markets at once and to arbitrage instantly between markets.
- In the past few decades there has been a general trend for deregulation of markets of all kinds. For example, financial markets were deregu-
lated in 1979 in Great Britain under the Thatcher administration and in the 1980s in the U.S. under the Reagan administration.
- In the past twenty years, Europe underwent a process of economic and monetary unification. Specifically, capital controls were abolished in 1986, the single market became reality in 1992, and in 1999 Europe achieved a monetary union with the emergence of the Euro.


### 6.1 Measuring the degree of capital mobility: (I) Saving-Investment correlations

In 1980 Feldstein and Horioka wrote a very provoking paper in which they showed that changes in countries' rates of national savings had a very large effect on their rates of investment. ${ }^{1}$ Feldstein and Horioka examined data on average investment-to-GDP and saving-to-GDP ratios from 16 industrial countries over the period 1960-74. The data used in their study is plotted in figure 6.1.

Feldstein and Horioka argued that if capital was highly mobile across countries, then the correlation between savings and investment should be close to zero, and therefore interpreted their findings as evidence of low capital mobility. The reason why Feldstein and Horioka arrived at this conclusion can be seen by considering the identity, $C A=S-I$. In a closed economy-i.e., in an economy without capital mobility - the current account is always zero, so that $S=I$ and changes in national savings are perfectly correlated with changes in investment. On the other hand, in a small open economy with perfect capital mobility, the interest rate is exogenously given by the world interest rate, so that if the savings and investment schedules are affected by independent factors, then the correlation between savings and investment should be zero. For instance, events that change only the savings schedule will result in changes in the equilibrium level of savings but will not affect the equilibrium level of investment (figure 6.2a). Similarly, events that affect only the investment schedule will result in changes in the equilibrium level of investment but will not affect the equilibrium level of national savings (figure 6.2b).

Feldstein and Horioka fit the following line through the cloud of points

[^15]Figure 6.1: Saving and Investment Rates for 16 Industrialized Countries, 1960-1974 Averages


Source: M. Feldstein and C. Horioka, "Domestic Saving and International Capital Flows," Economic Journal 90, June 1980, 314-29.
shown in figure 6.1: ${ }^{2}$

$$
\left(\frac{I}{Y}\right)_{i}=0.035+0.887\left(\frac{S}{Y}\right)_{i}+\nu_{i} ; \quad R^{2}=0.91
$$

where $(I / Y)_{i}$ and $(S / Y)_{i}$ are, respectively, the average investment-to-GDP and savings-to-GDP ratios in country $i$ over the period 1960-74. Figure 6.1 shows the fitted relationship as a solid line. Feldstein and Horioka used data on 16 OECD countries, so that their regression was based on 16 observations. The high value of the coefficient on $S / Y$ of 0.887 means that there is almost a one-to-one positive association between savings and investment rates. The reported $R^{2}$ statistic of 0.91 means that the estimated equation fits the data

[^16]Figure 6.2: Response of $S$ and $I$ to independent shifts in (a) the savings schedule and (b) the investment schedule

quite well, as 91 percent of the variation in $I / Y$ is explained by variations in $S / Y$.

The Feldstein-Horioka regression uses cross-country data. A positive relationship between savings and investment rates is also observed within countries over time (i.e., in time series data). Specifically, for OECD countries, the average correlation between savings and investment rates over the period 1974-90 is 0.495 . The savings-investment correlation has been weakening overtime. Figure 6.3 shows the U.S. savings and investment rates from 1955 to 1987. Until the late 1970s savings and investment were moving closely together whereas after 1980 they drifted apart. As we saw earlier (see figure 5.5), in the first half of the 1980s the U.S. economy experienced a large decline in national savings. A number of researchers have attributed the origin of these deficits to large fiscal deficits. Investment rates, on the other hand, remained about unchanged. As a result, the country experienced a string of unprecedented current account deficits. The fading association between savings and investment is reflected in lower values of the coefficient on $S / Y$ in Feldstein-Horioka style regressions. Specifically, Frankel (1993) ${ }^{3}$ estimates the relationship between savings and investment rates using time series data from the U.S. economy and finds that for the period 1955-1979 the coefficient on $S / Y$ is 1.05 and statistically indistinguishable from unity. He then extends the sample to include data until 1987, and finds that the coefficient drops to 0.03 and becomes statistically indistinguishable from zero. In the interpretation of Feldstein and Horioka, these regression results show

[^17]Figure 6.3: U.S. National Saving, Investment, and the Current Account as a Fraction of GNP, 1960-1998


Source: Department of Commerce, Bureau of Economic Analysis, www.bea. gov.
that in the 1980 the U.S. economy moved from a situation of very limited capital mobility to one of near perfect capital mobility.

But do the Feldstein-Horioka findings of high savings-investment correlations really imply imperfect capital mobility? Feldstein and Horioka's interpretation has been criticized on at least two grounds. First, even under perfect capital mobility, a positive association between savings and investment may arise because the same events might shift the savings and investment schedules. For example, suppose that, in a small open economy, the production functions in periods 1 and 2 are given by $Q_{1}=A_{1} F\left(K_{1}\right)$ and $Q_{2}=A_{2} F\left(K_{2}\right)$, respectively. Here $Q_{1}$ and $Q_{2}$ denote output in periods 1 and $2, K_{1}$ and $K_{2}$ denote the stocks of physical capital (such as plant and equipment) in periods 1 and $2, F(\cdot)$ is an increasing and concave production function stating that the higher is the capital input the higher is output, and $A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$ are positive parameters reflecting factors such as the state of technology, the effects of weather on the productivity of capital, and so forth. Consider a persistent productivity shock. Specifically, assume that $A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$ increase and that $A_{1}$ increases by more than $A_{2}$. This situation
is illustrated in figure 6.4, where the initial situation is one in which the

Figure 6.4: Response of $S$ and $I$ to a persistent productivity shock

savings schedule is given by $S(r)$ and the investment schedule by $I(r)$. At the world interest rate $r^{*}$, the equilibrium levels of savings and investment are given by $S$ and $I$. In response to the expected increase in $A_{2}$, firms are induced to increase next period's capital stock, $K_{2}$, to take advantage of the expected rise in productivity. In order to increase $K_{2}$, firms must invest more in period 1. Thus, $I_{1}$ goes up for every level of the interest rate. This implies that in response to the increase in $A_{2}$, the investment schedule shifts to the right to $I^{1}(r)$. At the same time, the increase in $A_{2}$ produces a positive wealth effect which induces households to increase consumption and reduce savings in period 1 . As a result, the increase in $A_{2}$ shift the savings schedule to the left. Now consider the effect of the increase in $A_{1}$. This should have no effect on desired investment because the capital stock in period 1 is predetermined. However, the increase in $A_{1}$ produces an increase in output in period $1\left(\Delta Q_{1}>0\right)$. Consumption-smoothing households will want to save part of the increase in $Q_{1}$. Therefore, the effect of an increase in $A_{1}$ is a rightward shift in the savings schedule. Because we assumed that $A_{1}$ increases by more than $A_{2}$, on net the savings schedule is likely to shift to the right. In the figure, the new savings schedule is given by $S^{1}(r)$. Because the economy is small, the interest rate is unaffected by the changes in $A_{1}$ and $A_{2}$. Thus, both savings and investment increase to $S^{1}$ and $I^{1}$,
respectively.
A second reason why savings and investment may be positively correlated in spite of perfect capital mobility is the presence of large country effects. Consider, for example, an event that affects only the savings schedule in a large open economy like the one represented in figure 6.5. In response to

Figure 6.5: Large open economy: response of $S$ and $I$ to a shift in the savings schedule


a shock that shifts the savings schedule to the right from $S(r)$ to $S^{\prime}(r)$ the current account schedule also shifts to the right from $C A(r)$ to $C A^{\prime}(r)$. As a result, the world interest rate falls from $r^{*}$ to $r^{* \prime}$. The fall in the interest rate leads to an increase in investment from $I$ to $I^{\prime}$. Thus, in a large open economy, a shock that affects only the savings schedule results in positive comovement between savings and investment.

### 6.2 Measuring capital mobility: (II) Interest rate differentials

A more direct measure of the degree of international capital mobility than the one used by Feldstein and Horioka is given by differences in interest rates across countries. In a world that enjoys perfect capital mobility, the rate of return on financial investments should be equalized across countries. Otherwise, arbitrage opportunities would arise inducing capital to flow out of the low-return countries and into the high-return countries. This movement of capital across national borders will tend to eliminate the difference in interest rates. If, on the other hand, one observes that interest rate differential across countries persist over time, it must be the case that in some countries restrictions on international capital flows are in place. It follows
that a natural empirical test of the degree of capital market integration is to look at cross-country interest rate differentials. However, such a test is not as straightforward as it might seem. One difficulty in measuring interest rate differentials is that interest rates across countries are not directly comparable if they relate to investments in different currencies. Suppose, for example, that the interest rate on a 1-year deposit in the United States is 6 percent and on a 1 -year deposit in Mexico is 30 percent. This interest rate differential will not necessarily induce capital flows to Mexico. The reason is that if the Mexican peso depreciates sharply within the investment period, an investor that deposited his money in Mexico might end up with fewer dollars at the end of the period than an investor that had invested in the United States. Thus, even in the absence of capital controls, differences in interest rates might exist due to expectations of changes in the exchange rate or as a compensation for exchange rate risk. It follows that a meaningful measure of interest rate differentials ought to take the exchange rate factor into account.

### 6.2.1 Covered interest rate parity

Suppose an investor has 1 US dollar and is trying to decide whether to invest it domestically or abroad, say in Germany. Let $i$ denote the US interest rate and $i^{*}$ the foreign (German) interest rate. If the investor deposits his money in the US, at the end of the period he receives $1+i$ dollars. How many dollars will he have if instead he invested his 1 dollar in Germany? In order to invest in Germany, he must first use his dollar to buy euros. Let $S$ denote the spot exchange rate, defined as the dollar price of 1 Euro. The investor gets $1 / S$ euros for his dollar. At the end of the investment period, he will receive $\left(1+i^{*}\right) / S$ euros. At this point he must convert the euros into dollars. Let $S^{\prime}$ denote the spot exchange rate prevailing at the end of the investment period. Then the $\left(1+i^{*}\right) / S$ euros can be converted into $\left(1+i^{*}\right) S^{\prime} / S$ dollars. Therefore, in deciding where to invest, the investor compares the return of investing in the US, $1+i$, to the dollar return of an equivalent investment in Germany, $\left(1+i^{*}\right) S^{\prime} / S$. If $1+i$ is greater than $\left(1+i^{*}\right) S^{\prime} / S$, then it is more profitable to invest in the United States. In fact, in this case, the investor could make unbounded profits by borrowing in Germany and investing in the US. Similarly, if $1+i$ is less than $\left(1+i^{*}\right) S^{\prime} / S$, the investor could make infinite profits by borrowing in the US and investing in Germany.

Continuing with the U.S./Germany investment decision problem, one difficulty is that at the time the investment is made the exchange rate prevailing at the end of the investment period, $S^{\prime}$, is unknown. This means
that $1+i$ and $\left(1+i^{*}\right) S^{\prime} / S$ are not directly comparable because the former is known with certainty at the time the investment is made whereas the latter is uncertain at that time.

However, the investor can eliminate the exchange rate uncertainty by buying, at the beginning of the investment period, the necessary amount of U.S. dollars to be delivered at the end of the investment period for a price arranged at the beginning of the period. Such a foreign currency purchase is called a forward contract. Let $F$ denote the forward rate, that is, the dollar price at the beginning of the investment period of 1 euro delivered and paid for at the end of the investment period. Then, the dollar return of a one-dollar investment in Germany using the forward exchange market is $\left(1+i^{*}\right) F / S$. This return is known with certainty at the beginning of the investment period, making it comparable to the return on the domestic investment, $1+i$. Thus, under free capital mobility it must be the case that

$$
1+i=\left(1+i^{*}\right) \frac{F}{S}
$$

Note that if $i$ is small, then the natural logarithm of $1+i$ is approximately equal to $i .^{4}$ Similarly, if $i^{*}$ is small, then the $\log$ of $1+i^{*}$ is well approximated by $i^{*}$. Letting $s$ and $f$ denote, respectively, the natural logarithms of $S$ and $F$, then we can rewrite the above expression as

$$
i=i^{*}+f-s
$$

The difference between the logs of the forward and the spot rates, which we will denote by $f d$, is called the forward discount, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
f d=f-s \tag{6.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

The forward discount measures the percentage difference between the forward and the spot exchange rates. We can then write the above expression as

$$
\begin{equation*}
i-i^{*}-f d=0 \tag{6.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

The left-hand side of this expression is known as the covered interest rate differential, or country risk premium. When the country risk premium is zero, we say that covered interest rate parity holds. In the absence of barriers to capital mobility, a violation of covered interest rate parity implies the existence of arbitrage opportunities. That is, the possibility of making unbounded amounts of profits by borrowing in one country and investing in

[^18]another without taking on any risk. Consider the following example. Suppose that the annual nominal interest rate in the U.S. is $7 \%(i=0.07)$, that the annual nominal interest rate in Germany is $3 \%\left(i^{*}=0.03\right)$, that the spot exchange rate is $\$ 0.5$ per euro ( $S=0.5$ ), and that the 1 -year forward exchange rate is $\$ 0.51$ per euro ( $F=0.51$ ). In this case, the forward discount is $2 \%$, or $f d=\ln (0.51 / 0.50) \approx 0.02$. Thus, the covered interest rate differential is $2 \%=7 \%-3 \%-2 \%$. In the absence of barriers to international capital mobility, this violation of covered interest parity implies that it is possible to make profits by borrowing in Germany, investing in the U.S., and buying euros in the forward market to eliminate the exchange rate risk. To see how one can exploit this situation consider the following sequence of trades. (1) borrow 1 euro in Germany. (2) exchange your euro in the spot market for $\$ 0.5$. (3) Invest the $\$ 0.5$ in U.S. assets. (4) buy 1.03 euros in the forward market (you will need this amount of euros to repay your euro loan including interest). Note that buying ruros in the forward market involves no payment at this point. (5) After 1 year, your U.S. investment yields $1.07 \times \$ 0.5=\$ 0.535$. (6) Execute your forward contract, that is, purchase 1.03 euros for $0.51 \$ / D M \times D M 1.03=\$ 0.5253$. The difference between what you receive in (5) and what you pay in (6) is $\$ 0.535-\$ 0.5253=\$ 0.0097>0$. Note that this operation involved no risk (because you used the forward market to eliminate exchange rate risk), needed no initial capital, and yielded a pure profit of $\$ 0.0097$. It is clear from this example that the country premium should be zero if there are no barriers to capital flows.

Table 6.1 shows the average covered interest rate differential for four countries over the period 1982-1988. Over that period Germany and Switzerland had small country risk premia: less than 50 basis points on average. Thus, Germany and Switzerland appeared to be relatively open to international capital flows in the early 1980s. By contrast, Mexico had an enormous negative country risk premium of over 16 percent. The period 1982-1988 corresponds to the post debt crisis period, when the financial sector in Mexico was nationalized and deposits were frozen. During that period, investors wanted to take their capital out of Mexico, but were impeded by financial regulations. In France barriers to the movement of capital were in place until 1986, which explains the large average deviations from covered interest rate parity vis-a-vis the two other industrialized countries shown in the table. The fact that the country risk premia of France and Mexico are negative indicates that capital controls were preventing capital from flowing out of these countries.

Table 6.2 presents an alternative approach to computing covered interest

Table 6.1: Covered interest rate differentials for selected countries September 1982-January 1988 (in percent)

|  | $i-i^{*}-f d$ |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
|  | Mean | Std. Dev. |
| Germany | 0.35 | 0.03 |
| Switzerland | 0.42 | 0.03 |
| Mexico | -16.7 | 1.83 |
| France | -1.74 | 0.32 |

The covered interest rate differential is measured by the domestic 3-month interest rate minus the 3-month Euro-dollar interest rate minus the forward discount. Source: J. Frankel, "Quantifying International Capital Mobility in the 1980s," in D. Das, International Finance, Routledge, 1993, table 2.6.
rate differentials. It uses interest rate differentials between domestic deposit rates and Eurocurrency deposit rates. For example, it compares the interest rate on a French franc deposit in France to the interest rate on a French franc deposit outside France, say in London. Since both deposits are in French francs the exchange rate plays no role in comparing the two interest rates. The table provides further evidence suggesting that the presence of capital controls leads to deviations from covered interest rate parity. It shows differences between domestic interbank and the corresponding Euro currency interest rate for France, Italy, Germany, and Japan from 1982 to 1993. In general, interest rate differentials are lower after 1987. This is most evident for France, where important capital market deregulation took place in 1986. In Italy, the high differential observed between 1990 and 1992 reflects market fears that capital controls might be imposed to avoid realignment of the lira, as an attempt to insulate the lira from speculative attacks, like the one that took place in August/September 1992. These violent speculative attacks, which affected a number of European economies, particularly, France, Sweden, Italy, and England, led to exchange rate realignments and a temporary suspension of the European Exchange Rate Mechanism (ERM) in September 1992. Once the ERM was reestablished, the lira interest rate differential falls as fears of capital controls vanish. Japan had large onshore/offshore differentials between February 1987 and June 1990, which were the result of the Bank of Japan's heavy use of administrative guidelines to hold interbank rates below offshore rates.

Table 6.2: International capital mobility in the 1990s
Domestic Interbank minus Eurocurrency 3-month interest rates: (in percent)

|  | $1 / 1 / 82-$ | $2 / 1 / 87-$ | $7 / 1 / 90-$ | $6 / 1 / 92-$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Country | $1 / 31 / 87$ | $6 / 30 / 90$ | $5 / 31 / 92$ | $4 / 30 / 93$ |
| France | -2.27 | -0.11 | 0.08 | -0.01 |
| Italy | -0.50 | 0.29 | 0.56 | 0.36 |
| Germany | 0.17 | 0.05 | -0.05 | 0.07 |
| Japan | -0.07 | -0.60 | 0.09 | 0.17 |

Source: M. Obstfeld, "International Capital Mobility in the 1990s," in Kenen, Understanding Interdependence: The Macroeconomics of the Open Economy, Princeton University Press, 1995, table 6.1.

The empirical evidence we have examined thus far shows that countries that have little barriers to capital mobility also tend to have small country premia on assets with short maturities, typically 3 months. However, this finding also holds for assets with longer maturities. For example, the covered interest rate differential on five-year U.S. government bonds versus Japanese bonds averaged only 0.017 percentage points in the period $10 / 3 / 1985$ to $7 / 10 / 1986$, and the differential on 7 -year bonds averaged only 0.053 percentage points. Over the same period, the mean differentials on 5 year bonds for Germany were 0.284 percentage points and 0.187 percentage points for Switzerland. ${ }^{5}$ The magnitude of the covered interest rate differentials at these longer maturities is in line with those reported in table 6.1 for much shorter maturities, supporting the argument that under free capital mobility covered interest rate differentials should vanish.

### 6.2.2 Real interest rate differentials and capital market integration

In the two-period model developed in previous chapters, perfect capital mobility amounts to the domestic real interest rate $r_{1}$ being equal to the world interest rate $r^{*}$. This suggests that another way of testing for capital mobility could be to look at real interest rate differentials across countries.

[^19]Table 6.3 shows real interest rate differentials, $r-r^{*}$, in the 1980s for four countries. The average real interest rate differential over the sample period was significantly different from zero and quite volatile, with the highest mean and standard deviation for Mexico, at the time a closed developing country. But there seems to be a puzzle in the data shown in the table. For exam-

Table 6.3: Real interest rate differentials for selected countries September 1982-January 1988

|  | $r-r^{*}$ |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
|  | Mean | Std. Dev. |
| Germany | -1.29 | 0.65 |
| Switzerland | -2.72 | 0.81 |
| Mexico | -20.28 | 9.43 |
| France | -0.48 | 0.72 |

Note: The real interest rate differential $\left(r-r^{*}\right)$ is measured by the local minus the Eurodollar 3-month real expost interest rate (that is, interest differential less realized inflation differential). Source: Jeffrey A. Frankel, "Quantifying International Capital Mobility in the 1980s," in D. Das, International Finance, Routledge, 1993, table 2.5.
ple, open developed economies such as Switzerland and Germany had large negative real interest rate differentials, while France had a much smaller real interest rate differential despite the fact that it had significant capital controls in place over most of the sample period. This suggests that real interest rate differentials might not be such a good measure of international capital mobility.

As will become clear soon, in reality, real interest rate differentials are not good indicators of the degree of capital mobility. They represent a good measure of international capital mobility only if the relative price of consumption baskets across countries does not change over time and if there is no nominal exchange rate uncertainty or if people don't care about that kind of risk. The first two conditions are met in our simple two-period model. In that model, there is only one good, which is assumed to be freely traded across countries. Thus, the relative price of consumption baskets across countries is constant and equal to one. In addition in that model there is no uncertainty, and in particular no exchange rate risk.

To show that in actual data capital mobility need not imply a zero real interest rate differential, we decompose the real interest rate differential into
three components. We begin by noting that the real interest rate is given by the difference between the nominal interest rate and expected inflation, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
r=i-\pi^{e} \tag{6.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $r$ denotes the real interest rate, $i$ denotes the nominal interest rate, and $\pi^{e}$ denotes expected inflation. This relationship is often referred to as the Fisher equation. A similar relation must hold in the foreign country, that is,

$$
r^{*}=i^{*}-\pi^{* e},
$$

where starred variables refer to variables in the foreign country. Taking the difference of the domestic and foreign Fisher equations, we obtain,

$$
r-r^{*}=\left(i-i^{*}\right)+\left(\pi^{* e}-\pi^{e}\right)
$$

We will manipulate this expression to obtain a decomposition of the real interest rate differential, $r-r^{*}$, into three terms reflecting: (i) the degree of capital mobility; (ii) nominal exchange rate risk; and (iii) expected changes in relative prices across countries. For illustrative purposes, let the U.S. be the domestic country and Germany the foreign country. As above, let $S$ be the spot nominal exchange rate defined as the price of 1 euro in terms of U.S. dollars and let $S^{e}$ be the nominal exchange rate expected to prevail next period. Also, let $F$ denote the forward rate. Let $s, s^{e}$, and $f$ denote, respectively, the logs of $S, S^{e}$, and $F$. Add and subtract $s+s^{e}+f$ to the right hand side of the above expression and rearrange terms to get

$$
\begin{equation*}
r-r^{*}=\left(i-i^{*}-f d\right)+\left(f-s^{e}\right)+\left(s^{e}-s+\pi^{* e}-\pi^{e}\right), \tag{6.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where we use the fact that $f-s$ equals the forward discount $f d$. The first term on the right-hand side of this expression is the covered interest rate differential. This term is zero if the country enjoys free capital mobility. However, the above expression shows that the real interest rate differential may not be equal to the covered interest rate differential if the sum of the second and third terms on the right-hand side is different from zero. To the extent that the sum of these two terms deviates significantly from zero, the real interest rate differential will be a poor indictor of the degree of capital market integration. This point is illustrated in table 6.4 , which shows the decomposition of the real interest rate differential for Germany, Switzerland, France, and Mexico.

We next discuss in more detail the factors that introduce a wedge between real and covered interest rate differentials. We begin by analyzing

Table 6.4: Decomposition of the real interest rate differential for selected countries: September 1982 to January 1988

| Country | $r-r^{*}$ | $i-i^{*}-f d$ <br> $(1)$ | $f-s^{e}$ <br> $(2)$ | $s^{e}-s+\pi^{* e}-\pi^{e}$ <br> $(3)$ |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Germany | -1.29 | 0.35 | 4.11 | -6.35 |
| Switzerland | -2.72 | 0.42 | 3.98 | -8.35 |
| France | -0.48 | -1.74 | 7.47 | -6.26 |
| Mexico | -20.28 | -16.47 | 6.04 | -3.32 |

Note: Columns (1), (2), and (3) do not add up to $r-r^{*}$ because in constructing (2) and (3) $s^{e}$, which is not directly observable, was proxied by the actual one-period-ahead spot exchange rate. Source: J. Frankel, "Quantifying International Capital Mobility in the 1980s," in D. Das, International Finance, Routledge, 1993, tables 2.5, 2.6, 2.8, and 2.9.
the second term on right-hand side of (6.4), $f-s^{e}$, which we will call exchange risk premium. Then we will study the meaning of the third term, $s^{e}-s+\pi^{* e}-\pi^{e}$, which is known as the expected real depreciation.

### 6.2.3 Exchange Risk Premium $\left(f-s^{e}\right)$

The exchange risk premium measures the percentage difference between the forward and the expected future spot exchange rates. It depends on the degree of uncertainty about future exchange rates as well as on people's attitudes towards risk. If there is no uncertainty about future exchange rates, then $S^{e}=F$ and the exchange risk premium is therefore zero. If investors are risk neutral, then all people care about is expected returns. In particular, if $S^{e}$ is, say, higher than $F$, then people would find it advantageous to buy euros in the forward market, which yields an expected profit of $S^{e}-F>0$. Thus, agents would demand unbounded amounts of forward euros, driving $F$ up until it is equal to $S^{e}$. Consequently, under risk neutrality $F=S^{e}$, or the exchange risk premium is zero. But typically the exchange risk premium is not zero reflecting the fact that neither of the two aforementioned assumptions hold. For example, column (2) of table 6.4 shows an estimate of the average exchange rate risk premium for Germany, Switzerland, France and Mexico over the period September 1982 to January 1988 using monthly data. For all countries the exchange risk premium is
positive and high, ranging from 4 percentage points for Switzerland to 7.5 percentage points for France.

### 6.2.4 Expected Real Depreciation, $s^{e}-s+\pi^{* e}-\pi^{e}$

The third term on the right-hand side of (6.4) is related to expected changes in the relative price of consumption baskets in the domestic (US) and the foreign (German) country. The relative price of a German consumption basket in terms of a US consumption basket is known as the real exchange rate. We will denote the real exchange rate by $e$. Formally, $e$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
e=\frac{S \cdot P^{*}}{P} \tag{6.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $P^{*}$ is the euro price of a German consumption basket and $P$ is the dollar price of a US consumption basket. An increase in $e$ means that Germany becomes more expensive relative to the U.S.. In this case, we say that the U.S. dollar experiences a real depreciation because one needs more U.S. consumption baskets to purchase one German basket. Similarly, a decline in $e$ is referred to as a real appreciation of the U.S. dollar. Letting $p$ and $p^{*}$ denote the logs of $P$ and $P^{*}$, we have

$$
\ln e=s+p^{*}-p
$$

The expectation of the log of the real exchange rate next period is similarly given by

$$
\ln e^{e}=s^{e}+p^{* e}-p^{e},
$$

where the superscript ${ }^{e}$ denotes expected value next period. It follows from the above two expressions that

$$
\ln e^{e}-\ln e=\left(s^{e}-s\right)+\left(p^{* e}-p^{*}\right)-\left(p^{e}-p\right) .
$$

The left-hand side of this expression is the expected percentage depreciation of the real exchange rate, which we will denote by $\% \Delta e^{e}$. The first term on the right-hand side is the expected depreciation of the spot (or nominal) exchange rate. The second and third terms represent, respectively, expected consumer price inflation in the foreign (German) and the domestic (US) economies, $\pi^{* e}$ and $\pi^{e}$. Thus, we can express the expected percentage increase in $e$ as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\% \Delta e^{e}=s^{e}-s+\pi^{* e}-\pi^{e}, \tag{6.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using (6.1) and (6.6) we can write the real interest rate differential given in (6.4) as

$$
\begin{equation*}
r-r^{*}=\left(i-i^{*}-f d\right)+\left(f-s^{e}\right)+\% \Delta e^{e} \tag{6.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression says that the real interest rate differential can be decomposed into the country premium, the exchange risk premium, and the expected depreciation of the real exchange rate. We use the following terminology:

- If $i-i^{*}-f d>0$, we say that the country premium is positive.
- If $f-s^{e}>0$, we say that the exchange risk premium is positive.
- If $\% \Delta e^{e}>0$, we say that the real exchange rate is expected to depreciate.

As we mentioned earlier, the real exchange rate, $e \equiv S P^{*} / P$, is the relative price of a basket of consumption in the foreign country in terms of a basket of consumption in the domestic country. Suppose that the baskets of consumption in both countries contained only one good, say wheat, and that the good is freely traded between the two countries. Then the price of wheat in the U.S., $P$, must equal the dollar price of buying wheat in Germany, which is given by $P^{*}$, the price of wheat in German euros, times $S$, the nominal exchange rate; that is, $P=P^{*} S$. Thus, in this case the real exchange rate, $e$, is identically equal to 1 in every period. When $e=1$, we say that purchasing power parity (PPP) holds. Clearly, if PPP holds, then the expected real depreciation, $\% \Delta e^{e}$, is equal to zero because the real exchange rate is always expected to be equal to 1 . In the 2 -period model we have been studying thus far, there is only one good, which is freely traded in world markets. Thus, in our model, PPP holds.

In reality, however, PPP does not hold. Column (3) of table 6.4 shows that the German mark experienced a real appreciation of $6.3 \%$ per year vis-a-vis the US dollar over the period September 1982 to January 1988. This means that a basket of consumption in Germany became more expensive than a basket of consumption in the United States over the period considered. A similar pattern emerges for the other countries included in the table. In fact, for Germany and Switzerland, which had free capital mobility in the period covered by the table, the expected real appreciation explains the observed negative real interest rate differential. This is because for these two economies, the country premium is negligible and the exchange risk premium was positive.

But why does PPP not hold? An important reason is that the assumption that all goods are freely traded across countries, which we used to construct the wheat example, is counterfactual. In the real world there is a large number of goods that are not traded internationally, such as haircuts, housing, ground transportation, and so forth. We refer to these goods as nontradables. Also, barriers to international trade, such as import tariffs and quotas, introduce a wedge between the domestic and foreign prices of goods and services. We will explore the factors affecting the determination of the real exchange rate in more detail in the next chapter.

We conclude this section by reiterating that the real interest rate differential, $r-r^{*}$, is in general not a true measure of international capital mobility. Capital mobility is better measured by deviations from covered interest rate parity $\left(i-i^{*}-f d\right)$. In the 2 -period model we studied in previous chapters, there is only one good in each period, which is freely traded across countries and there is no exchange rate uncertainty. Thus, in our model both the exchange risk premium and expected real depreciation are equal to zero. This means that our model represents a special case in which real interest rate parity implies free capital mobility.

## Chapter 7

## Determinants of the Real Exchange Rate

In the previous chapter, we saw that among industrialized countries real interest rate differentials can be explained, to a large extent, by expected changes in the real exchange rate. In this chapter, we study the determinants of the real exchange rate.

Figure 7.1 shows with a solid line the U.S. consumer price index and with a broken line the U.K. consumer price index expressed in U.S. dollars over the period 1820-2001 using a log scale. The vertical difference between the two lines is a measure of the dollar-pound real exchange rate. The dollar-pound real exchange rate, $e^{\$ / £}$, is given by $E^{\S / £} P^{U K} / P^{U S}$, where $E^{\S / £}$ is the dollar-pound nominal exchange rate (i.e., the dollar price of one pound), $P^{U K}$ is the price level in the U.K., and $P^{U S}$ is the price level in the U.S. Thus, $e^{\$ / £}$ is the relative price of a consumption basket in the U.K. in terms of consumption baskets in the United States. The figure shows that the real exchange rate varied a lot from year to year and that movements in the real exchange rate were highly persistent. This means that PPP (i.e., $P^{U S}=E^{\S / £} P^{U K}$ ) does not hold period by period. However, the figure also shows that over the long run $P^{U S}$ and $E^{\$ / £} P^{U K}$ move in tandem. This fact suggests that PPP is a useful approximation to actual real exchange rate behavior over long horizons.

If PPP holds over the long run, then it must be the case that, on average,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\% \Delta P-\% \Delta P^{*}=\% \Delta E, \tag{7.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\% \Delta E, \% \Delta P$, and $\% \Delta P^{*}$ denote, respectively, the percentage change in the nominal exchange rate (or rate of nominal exchange rate depreciation),

Figure 7.1: Dollar-Sterling PPP Over Two Centuries


Note: The figure shows U.S. and U.K. consumer price indices expressed in U.S. dollar terms over the period 1820-2001 using a log scale with a base of $1900=0$. Source: Alan M. Taylor and Mark P. Taylor, "The Purchasing Power Parity Debate," Journal of Economic Perspectives 18, Fall 2004, 135-158.
the percentage change in the domestic price level (or the rate of domestic inflation), and the percentage change in the foreign price level (or the rate of foreign inflation).

Figure 7.2 shows a scatterplot of average inflation differentials relative to the U.S. against rates of dollar exchange rate depreciation between 1970 and 1998 for 20 developed countries and 26 developing countries. Equation (7.1) states that if PPP holds over the long run, then the points on the scatterplot should lie on a line with slope equal to 1 and an intercept of zero. The figure shows that this relation is quite accurate for both high- and lowinflation countries: countries with high average exchange rate depreciations were countries that experienced high average inflation-rate differentials vis-àvis the United States, and countries whose currency did not depreciate much vis-à-vis the U.S. dollar tended to have low average inflation differentials.

Figure 7.2: Consumer Price Inflation Relative to the U.S. Versus Dollar Exchange Rate Depreciation, 29-Year Average, 1970-1998


Note: The figure shows countries' cummulative inflation rate differentials against the United States in percent (vertical axis) plotted against their cumulative depreciation rates against the U.S. dollar in percent (horizontal axis). The sample includes data from 20 industrialized countries and 26 developing countries. Source: Alan M. Taylor and Mark P. Taylor, "The Purchasing Power Parity Debate," Journal of Economic Perspectives 18, Fall 2004, 135-158.

In the two-period model we developed in chapters 2 and 3, there is a single traded good. Thus, under the maintained assumption of free international trade, purchasing power parity obtained, that is, $e=E P^{*} / P=1$. As we have just seen, this prediction or our model obtains in the long run but not in the medium to short runs. Why does our model fail to predict shortto medium-run deviations from PPP? One reason is that in reality, contrary to what is assumed in the model, not all goods are tradable. Examples of nontraded goods are services, such as haircuts, restaurant meals, housing, health, and education. For these goods transport costs are so large relative to the production cost that they can never be traded internationally at a profit. Such goods and services are called nontradables. In general, nontradables make up a significant share of a country's output, typically above

50 percent. The existence of nontradables allows for systematic violations of PPP. The price index $P$ is an average of all prices in the economy. Thus, it depends on both the prices of nontradables and the prices of tradables. But the prices of nontradables are determined entirely by domestic factors, so one should not expect the law of one price to hold for this type of goods.

Other things equal, a rise in the price of nontradables in the domestic economy can increase a country's aggregate price level relative to the foreign price level. To see this, let $P_{T}$ and $P_{N}$ denote the domestic prices of tradables and nontradables, respectively, and let $P_{T}^{*}$ and $P_{N}^{*}$ denote the corresponding foreign prices. For traded goods the law of one price should hold, that is,

$$
P_{T}=E P_{T}^{*},
$$

but for nontraded goods it need not

$$
P_{N} \neq E P_{N}{ }^{*} .
$$

Suppose the price level, $P$, is constructed as follows:

$$
P=\phi\left(P_{T}, P_{N}\right)
$$

where $\phi$ is increasing in $P_{T}$ and $P_{N}$ and homogeneous of degree one. ${ }^{1}$ The price level $P$ is an average of individual prices. The assumption that $\phi(\cdot, \cdot)$ is homogeneous of degree one ensures that, if all individual prices increase by, say, $5 \%$, then $P$ also increases by $5 \%$. Given the way in which the price level is constructed, the real exchange rate, $e$, can be expressed as

$$
\begin{align*}
e & =\frac{E P^{*}}{P} \\
& =\frac{E \phi\left(P_{T}^{*}, P_{N}^{*}\right)}{\phi\left(P_{T}, P_{N}\right)} \\
& =\frac{E P_{T}^{*} \phi\left(1, P_{N}^{*} / P_{T}^{*}\right)}{P_{T} \phi\left(1, P_{N} / P_{T}\right)} \\
& =\frac{\phi\left(1, P_{N}^{*} / P_{T}^{*}\right)}{\phi\left(1, P_{N} / P_{T}\right)} . \tag{7.2}
\end{align*}
$$

So the real exchange rate should depend on the ratio of nontraded to traded prices in both countries. The real exchange rate is greater than one (or the price of the foreign consumption basket is higher than the price of the

[^20]domestic consumption basket) if the relative price of nontradables in terms of tradables is higher in the foreign country than domestically. Formally,
$$
e>1 \text { if } \frac{P_{N}^{*}}{P_{T}^{*}}>\frac{P_{N}}{P_{T}} .
$$

It is straightforward to see from this inequality that $e$ can increase over time if the price ratio on the left-hand side increases over time more than the one on the right hand side.

When considering a particular country pair, it is useful to define a bilateral real exchange rate. For example, the dollar-yen real exchange rate is given by

$$
e^{\S / ¥}=\frac{E^{\S / ¥} P^{J a p a n}}{P^{U . S .}}=\frac{\text { Price of Japanese goods basket }}{\text { Price of US goods basket }} .
$$

Suppose $e^{\S / ¥}$ increases, then the price of the Japanese goods basket in terms of the U.S. goods basket increases. In this case, we say that the dollar real exchange rate vis-à-vis the yen depreciated, because it takes now more U.S. goods baskets to purchase one Japanese goods basket.

At this point, a word of caution about semantics is in order. Economists use the term real exchange rate loosely. The term real exchange rate is sometimes used to refer to $E P^{*} / P$ and sometimes to refer simply to $P_{T} / P_{N}$. A real exchange rate appreciation means that either $E P^{*} / P$ falls or that $P_{T} / P_{N}$ falls, depending on the concept of real exchange rate being used. Similarly, a real exchange rate depreciation means that either $E P^{*} / P$ goes up or that $P_{T} / P_{N}$ goes up.

Next we turn to an analysis of the determinants of real exchange rates. We begin by studying a theory that explains medium-run variations in bilateral real exchange rates. What do we mean by medium run in this context? Take another look at figure 7.1. The figure shows that over a period of 180 years prices in the United States and the United Kingdom expressed in the same currency changed by about the same magnitude. However, they deviated significantly on a period-by-period basis. and, more importantly, these deviations were fairly persistent. For instance, during the 1980s the U.S. price level grew faster than the U.K. counterpart measured in the same currency. That is, a representative basket of goods became relatively more expensive in the United States than in the United Kingdom, or the dollarpound exchange rate experienced a prolonged real appreciation. The theory that follows explains these medium-term deviations in PPP as resulting from differences across countries in the productivity of the tradable sector relative to the productivity of the nontradable sector.

### 7.1 Productivity Differentials and Real Exchange Rates: The Balassa-Samuelson Model

According to the Balassa-Samuelson model deviations from PPP are due to cross-country differentials in the productivity of technology to produce traded and nontraded goods. In this section, we study a simple model that captures the Balassa-Samuelson result.

Suppose a country produces 2 kinds of goods, traded goods, $Q_{T}$, and nontraded goods, $Q_{N}$. Both goods are produced with a linear production technology that takes labor as the only factor input. However, labor productivity varies across sectors. Specifically, assume that output in the traded and nontraded sectors are, respectively, given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{T}=a_{T} L_{T} \tag{7.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
Q_{N}=a_{N} L_{N}, \tag{7.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $L_{T}$ and $L_{N}$ denote labor input in the traded and nontraded sectors. Labor productivity is defined as output per unit of labor. Given the linear production technologies, we have that labor productivity in the traded sector is $a_{T}$ and in the nontraded sector is $a_{N} .^{2}$

In the traded sector, a firm's profit is given by the difference between revenues from sales of traded goods, $P_{T} Q_{T}$, and total cost of production, $w L_{T}$, where $w$ denotes the wage rate per worker. That is,

$$
\text { profits in the traded sector }=P_{T} Q_{T}-w L_{T} \text {. }
$$

Similarly, in the nontraded sector we have

$$
\text { profits in the nontraded sector }=P_{N} Q_{N}-w L_{N} .
$$

We assume that there is perfect competition in both sectors and that there are no restrictions on entry of new firms. This means that as long as profits are positive new firms will have incentives to enter, driving prices down.

[^21]Therefore, in equilibrium, prices and wages must be such that profits are zero in both sectors,

$$
P_{T} Q_{T}=w L_{T}
$$

and

$$
P_{N} Q_{N}=w L_{N} .
$$

Using the production functions (7.3) and (7.4) to eliminate $Q_{T}$ and $Q_{N}$ from the above two expressions, the zero-profit conditions imply

$$
P_{T} a_{T}=w
$$

and

$$
P_{N} a_{N}=w .
$$

Combining these two expressions to eliminate $w$ yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{P_{T}}{P_{N}}=\frac{a_{N}}{a_{T}} . \tag{7.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression says that the relative price of traded to nontraded goods is equal to the ratio of labor productivity in the nontraded sector to that in the traded sector. To understand the intuition behind this condition suppose that $a_{N}$ is greater than $a_{T}$. This means that one unit of labor produces more units of nontraded goods than of traded goods. Therefore, producing 1 unit of nontraded goods costs less than producing 1 unit of traded goods, and as a result nontraded goods should be cheaper than traded goods ( $P_{N} / P_{T}<1$ ). According to equation (7.5), a period in which labor productivity in the nontraded sector is growing faster than labor productivity in the traded sector will be associated with real exchange rate depreciation (i.e., with $P_{T} / P_{N}$ rising).

Is the implication of the Balassa-Samuelson model that the relative price of nontradable goods in terms of tradable goods is increasing in the productivity differential between the traded and nontraded sectors borne out in the data? Figure 7.3 plots the averages of the annual percentage change in $P_{N} / P_{T}$ (vertical axis) against the average annual percentage change in $a_{T} / a_{N}$ (horizontal axis) over the period 1970-1985 for 14 OECD countires. According to the Balassa-Samuelson model, all observations should line up on the 45 -degree line. This is not quite the case. Yet, the data indicate a strong positive relation between difference in total factor productivity and changes in relative prices.

Figure 7.3: Differential Factor Productivity Growth and Changes in the Relative Price of Nontradables


Note: The figure plots the average annual percentage change in the relative price of nontradables in terms of tradables (vertical axis) against the average annual growth in total factor productivity differential between the traded sector and the nontraded sectors (horizontal axis) over the period 1970-1985 for 14 OECD countries. Source: José De Gregorio, Alberto Giovannini, and Holger C. Wolf, "International Evidence on Tradable and Nontradable Inflation," European Economic Review 38, June 1994, 1225-1244.

In the foreign country, the relative price of tradables in terms of nontradables is determined in a similar fashion, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{P_{T}^{*}}{P_{N}^{*}}=\frac{a_{N}^{*}}{a_{T}^{*}}, \tag{7.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $P_{T}^{*} / P_{N}^{*}$ denotes the relative price of tradables in terms of nontradables in the foreign country, and $a_{T}^{*}$ and $a_{N}^{*}$ denote the labor productivities in the foreign country's traded and nontraded sectors, respectively. To obtain the equilibrium bilateral real exchange rate, $e=E P^{*} / P$, combine equations (7.2), (7.5) and (7.6):

$$
\begin{equation*}
e=\frac{\phi\left(1, a_{T}^{*} / a_{N}^{*}\right)}{\phi\left(1, a_{T} / a_{N}\right)} \tag{7.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

This equation captures the main result of the Balassa-Samuelson model, namely, that deviations from PPP (i.e., variations in $e$ ) are due to differences in relative productivity growth rates across countries. In particular, if in the domestic country the relative productivity of the traded sector, $a_{T} / a_{N}$, is growing faster than in the foreign country, then the real exchange rate will appreciate over time (e will fall over time), this is because in the home country nontradables are becoming relatively more expensive to produce than in the foreign country, forcing the relative price of nontradables in the domestic country to grow at a faster rate than in the foreign country.

The relative price of traded goods in terms of nontraded goods, $P_{T} / P_{N}$, can be related to the slope of the production possibility frontier as follows. Let $L$ denote the aggregate labor supply, which we will assume to be fixed. Then the resource constraint in the labor market is

$$
L=L_{N}+L_{T}
$$

Use equations (7.3) and (7.4) to eliminate $L_{N}$ and $L_{T}$ from this expression to get $L=Q_{N} / a_{N}+Q_{T} / a_{T}$. Now solve for $Q_{N}$ to obtain the following production possibility frontier (PPF)

$$
Q_{N}=a_{N} L-\frac{a_{N}}{a_{T}} Q_{T}
$$

Figure 7.4 plots the production possibility frontier. The slope of the PPF is

$$
\frac{d Q_{N}}{d Q_{T}}=-\frac{a_{N}}{a_{T}}
$$

Combining this last expression with equation (7.5), it follows that the slope of the PPF is equal to $-P_{T} / P_{N}$.

Figure 7.4: The production possibility frontier (PPF): the case of linear technology


### 7.1.1 Application: The Real Exchange Rate and Labor Productivity: 1970-1993

Figure 7.5, reproduced from a quantitative study of productivity and exchange rates by Matthew B. Canzoneri, Robert E. Cumby, and Behzad Diba of Georgetown University, ${ }^{3}$ plots bilateral real exchange rates and the ratio of labor productivity in the traded and the nontraded goods sectors for four OECD country pairs. For instance, the top left panel plots $e^{\S / D M} \equiv E^{\S / D M} P^{\text {Germany }} / P^{U S}, a_{T}^{U S} / a_{N}^{U S}$, and $a_{T}^{\text {Germany }} / a_{N}^{\text {Germany }}$, where $D M$ stands for German mark. As Canzoneri, Cumby, and Diba observe, the figure suggests that the Balassa-Samuelson model has mixed success at explaining real-exchange-rate movements over the period 1970-1993. The Balassa-Samuelson model does a fairly good job at explaining the DM/Lira and the DM/Yen real exchange rates. Between the late 1970s and the early 1990s, both Italy and Japan experienced faster productivity growth in the traded sector relative to the nontraded sector than did Germany. At the same time, as predicted by the Balassa-Samuelson both the Italian lira and the Japanese yen appreciated in real terms vis-à-vis the German mark. On the other hand, in the case of the United States, movements in the real exchange rate seem to be less correlated with changes in relative productivity

[^22]Figure 7.5: The Real Exchange Rate and Labor Productivity in selected OECD Countries: 1970-1993


Source: Matthew B. Canzoneri, Robert E. Cumby, and Behzad Diba, "Relative Labor Productivity and the Real Exchange Rate in the Long Run: Evidence for a Panel of OECD Countries," Journal of International Economics 47, 1999, 245-266.
growth. In the case of the Dollar/DM real exchange rate the observed real appreciation of the dollar in the mid 1980s was not accompanied by a corresponding increase in relative productivity differentials in favor of the U.S. traded sector. In the case of the Dollar/Yen exchange rate, the appreciation in the yen in real terms was, as predicted by the Balassa-Samuelson model, associated with an increase in relative labor productivity in the traded sector in Japan. However, the observed changes in relative labor productivity were too small to explain the extent of the real appreciation of the yen against the dollar.

### 7.1.2 Application: Deviations from PPP observed between rich and poor countries

Table 7.1 shows the bilateral real exchange rate for a number of countries

Table 7.1: The real exchange rate of rich and poor countries, 2005

| Country | Real <br> Exchange <br> Rate |
| :--- | :---: |
| Ethiopia | 5.4 |
| Bangladesh | 5.0 |
| India | 4.7 |
| Pakistan | 3.4 |
| Unites States | 1.0 |
| Germany | 0.9 |
| Sweden | 0.8 |
| Switzerland | 0.6 |
| Japan | 0.9 |

Source: World Economic Outlook Database, IMF, April 2006.
vis-à-vis the United States. Countries are divided into two groups, poor countries and rich countries. The real exchange rate for a given country, say India, vis-à-vis the United States, $e^{\text {rupee } / \$}$ is given by $E^{\text {rupee } / \$} P^{U S} / P^{I}$, where $E^{\text {rupee } / \$}$ is the rupee/dollar nominal exchange rate defined as the price of one dollar in terms of rupee, $P^{U S}$ is the price level in the U.S., and $P^{I}$ is the price level in India. The table shows that the real exchange rate in poor countries, $e^{p o o r / U S}$, is typically greater than that in rich countries, $e^{r i c h / U S}$. For example, the Bangladesh/U.S. real exchange rate in 2005 was
5.0, but Switzerland's real exchange rate vis-à-vis the dollar was only 0.6 . This means that in 2005 a basket of goods in Switzerland was about 8 $(=5.0 / 0.6)$ times as expensive as in Bangladesh.

How can we explain this empirical regularity? Note that

$$
\frac{e^{\text {poor } / U S}}{e^{\text {rich } / U S}}=\frac{E^{\text {poor } / U S S_{P} U S}}{P^{\text {Proor }}} \frac{E^{\text {poor } / U S} P^{\text {rich }}}{P^{\text {rich }} P^{\text {PSS }}}=\frac{E^{\text {poor } / \text { rich }} P^{\text {rich }}}{P^{\text {rich } / U S} P^{\text {poor }}}=\frac{e^{\text {poor } / \text { rich }}}{P^{\text {poor }}}
$$

Using equation (7.2), $e^{\text {poor/rich }}$ can be expressed as

$$
e^{\text {poor } / \text { rich }}=\frac{\phi\left(1, P_{N}^{\text {rich }} / P_{T}^{\text {rich }}\right)}{\phi\left(1, P_{N}^{\text {poor }} / P_{T}^{\text {poor }}\right)}
$$

Finally, using the Balassa-Samuelson model, to replace price ratios with relative labor productivities (equation (7.6)), we get

$$
e^{\text {poor } / \text { rich }}=\frac{\phi\left(1, a_{T}^{r i c h} / a_{N}^{r i c h}\right)}{\phi\left(1, a_{T}^{\text {poor }} / a_{N}^{\text {poor }}\right)}
$$

Productivity differentials between poor and rich countries are most extreme in the traded good sector, implying that $a_{T}^{\text {rich }} / a_{N}^{\text {rich }}>a_{T}^{\text {poor }} / a_{N}^{\text {poor }}$. So the observed relative productivity differentials can explain why the real exchange rate is relatively high in poor countries.

The Balassa-Samuelson framework is most appropriate to study long-run deviations from PPP because productivity differentials change slowly over time. However, we also observe a great deal of variation in real exchange rates in the short run. The next sections and the following chapter study sources of short-run deviations from PPP.

### 7.2 Trade Barriers and Real Exchange Rates

In the previous section, deviations from PPP occur due to the presence of nontradables. In this section, we investigate deviations from the law of one price that may arise even when all goods are traded. Specifically, we study deviations from the law of one price that arise because governments impose trade barriers, such as import tariffs, export subsidies, and quotas, that artificially distort relative prices across countries.

Consider an economy with 2 types of traded goods, importables and exportables. Let the world price of importables be $P_{M}^{*}$, and the world price of exportables be $P_{X}^{*}$. Assume for simplicity that there are no nontradable
goods. In the absence of trade barriers, PPP must hold for both goods, that is, the domestic prices of exportables and importables must be given by

$$
P_{X}=E P_{X}^{*}
$$

and

$$
P_{M}=E P_{M}^{*},
$$

where $E$ denotes the nominal exchange rate defined as the domestic currency price of one unit of foreign currency. The domestic price level, $P$, is an average of $P_{X}$ and $P_{M}$. Specifically, assume that $P$ is given by

$$
P=\phi\left(P_{X}, P_{M}\right),
$$

where $\phi(\cdot, \cdot)$ is an increasing and homogeneous-of-degree-one function. A similar relation holds in the foreign country

$$
P^{*}=\phi\left(P_{X}^{*}, P_{M}^{*}\right)
$$

The bilateral real exchange rate, $e=E P^{*} / P$, can then be written as

$$
e=\frac{E \phi\left(P_{X}^{*}, P_{M}^{*}\right)}{\phi\left(P_{X}, P_{M}\right)}=\frac{\phi\left(E P_{X}^{*}, E P_{M}^{*}\right)}{\phi\left(P_{X}, P_{M}\right)}=\frac{\phi\left(P_{X}, P_{M}\right)}{\phi\left(P_{X}, P_{M}\right)}=1,
$$

where the second equality uses the fact that $\phi$ is homogeneous of degree one and the third equality uses the fact that PPP holds for both goods.

Consider now the consequences of imposing a tariff $\tau>0$ on imports in the home country. The domestic price of the import good therefore increases by a factor of $\tau$, that is,

$$
P_{M}=(1+\tau) E P_{M}^{*} .
$$

The domestic price of exportables is unaffected by the import tariff. Then the real exchange rate becomes

$$
e=\frac{E \phi\left(P_{X}^{*}, P_{M}^{*}\right)}{\phi\left(P_{X}, P_{M}\right)}=\frac{\phi\left(E P_{X}^{*}, E P_{M}^{*}\right)}{\phi\left(E P_{X}^{*},(1+\tau) E P_{M}^{*}\right)}<1,
$$

where the inequality follows from the fact that $\phi(\cdot, \cdot)$ is increasing in both arguments and that $1+\tau>1$. This expression shows that the imposition of import tariffs leads to an appreciation of the real exchange rate as it makes the domestic consumption basket more expensive. Therefore, one source of deviations from PPP is the existence of trade barriers. One should expect that a trade liberalization that eliminates this type of trade distortions should induce an increase in the relative price of exports over imports goods so $e$ should rise (i.e., the real exchange rate should depreciate). ${ }^{4}$

[^23]
## Chapter 8

## Changes in Aggregate Spending and the Real Exchange Rate: The TNT Model

In the Balassa-Samuelson model studied in section 7.1, the production possibility frontier (PPF) is a straight line, which means that the slope of the PPF is the same regardless of the level of production of tradables and nontradables. Because in equilibrium the relative price of tradables in terms of nontradables equals the slope of the PPF, it follows that in the BalassaSamuelson model the real exchange rate is independent of the level of production of tradables and nontradables. In this section, we will study a more realistic version of the model, the TNT model, in which the PPF is a concave function. As a result of this modification, the slope of the PPF, and therefore the relative price $P_{T} / P_{N}$, depends on the composition of output, which in equilibrium will be determined by the level of aggregate spending.

The TNT model has three building blocks: The production possibility frontier, which describes the production side of the economy; the income expansion path, which summarizes the aggregate demand for goods; and international borrowing and lending, which allows agents to shift consumption across time. ${ }^{1}$ In subsections 8.1 and 8.2 develop the first two building blocks. Then in subsection 8.3 we characterize a partial equilibrium by studying the

[^24]determination of production, consumption and the real exchange rate in a given period taking as given the level of international borrowing and lending (i.e., taking as given the level of the current account balance). Finally, in subsection 8.4 we consider the general equilibrium of the economy, in which all variables, including the current account, are determined endogenously.

### 8.1 The production possibility frontier

Consider an economy that produces traded and nontraded goods with labor as the only factor input. Specifically, the production functions are given by

$$
\begin{align*}
Q_{T} & =F_{T}\left(L_{T}\right)  \tag{8.1}\\
Q_{N} & =F_{N}\left(L_{N}\right) \tag{8.2}
\end{align*}
$$

where $Q_{T}$ and $Q_{N}$ denote output of traded and nontraded goods, respectively and $L_{T}$ and $L_{N}$ denote labor input in the traded and nontraded sectors. The production functions $F_{T}(\cdot)$ and $F_{N}(\cdot)$ are assumed to be increasing and concave, that is, $F_{T}^{\prime}>0, F_{N}^{\prime}>0, F_{T}^{\prime \prime}<0, F_{N}^{\prime \prime}<0$. The assumption that the production functions are concave means that the marginal productivity of labor is decreasing in the amount of labor input used. ${ }^{2}$ The total supply of labor in the economy is assumed to be equal to $L$, which is a positive constant. Therefore, the allocation of labor across sectors must satisfy the following resource constraint:

$$
\begin{equation*}
L_{T}+L_{N}=L \tag{8.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

The two production functions along with this resource constraint can be combined into a single equation relating $Q_{N}$ to $Q_{T}$. This relation is the production possibility frontier of the economy, which is shown in figure 8.1. The fact that production displays decreasing marginal productivity of labor implies that the PPF is concave toward the origin. The slope of the PPF, $d Q_{N} / d Q_{T}$, indicates the number of units of nontraded output that must be given up to produce an additional unit of traded output. That is, the slope of the PPF represents the cost of producing an additional unit of tradables in terms of nontradables. As $Q_{T}$ increases, the PPF becomes steeper, which means that as $Q_{T}$ increases, it is necessary to sacrify more units of nontraded

[^25]Figure 8.1: The production possibility frontier (PPF): the case of decreasing marginal productivity of labor

output to increase traded output by one unit. The slope of the PPF is given by the ratio of the marginal products of labor in the two sectors, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{d Q_{N}}{d Q_{T}}=-\frac{F_{N}^{\prime}\left(L_{N}\right)}{F_{T}^{\prime}\left(L_{T}\right)} \tag{8.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

This expression makes it clear that the reason why the PPF becomes steeper as $Q_{T}$ increases is that as $Q_{T}$ increases so does $L_{T}$ and thus the marginal productivity of labor in the traded sector, $F_{T}^{\prime}\left(L_{T}\right)$ becomes smaller, while the marginal productivity of labor in the nontraded sector, $F_{N}^{\prime}\left(L_{N}\right)$, increases as $Q_{N}$ and $L_{N}$ decline.

The slope of the PPF can be derived as follows. Differentiate the resource constraint (8.3) to get

$$
d L_{T}+d L_{N}=0
$$

or

$$
\frac{d L_{N}}{d L_{T}}=-1
$$

This expression says that, because the total amount of labor is fixed, any increase in labor input in the traded sector must be offset by a one-forone reduction of labor input in the nontraded sector. Now differentiate the production functions (8.1) and (8.2)

$$
\begin{aligned}
d Q_{T} & =F_{T}^{\prime}\left(L_{T}\right) d L_{T} \\
d Q_{N} & =F_{N}^{\prime}\left(L_{N}\right) d L_{N}
\end{aligned}
$$

Taking the ratio of these two equations and using the fact that $d L_{N} / d L_{T}=$ -1 yields equation (8.4).

The slope of the PPF indicates how many units of nontradables it costs to produce one additional unit of tradables. In turn, the relative price of tradables in terms of nontradables, $P_{T} / P_{N}$, measures the relative revenue of selling one unit of traded good in terms of nontraded goods. Profitmaximizing firms will choose a production mix such that the relative revenue of selling an additional unit of tradables in terms of nontradables equals the relative cost of tradables in terms of nontradables. That is, firms will produce at a point at which the slope of the PPF equals (minus) the relative price of tradables in terms of nontradables:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{F_{N}^{\prime}\left(L_{N}\right)}{F_{T}^{\prime}\left(L_{T}\right)}=\frac{P_{T}}{P_{N}} \tag{8.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Suppose that the real exchange rate, $P_{T} / P_{N}$ is given by minus the slope of the line $A^{\prime} A^{\prime}$, which is $-P_{T}^{o} / P_{N}^{o}$ in figure 8.1. Then firms will choose to produce at point $A$, where the slope of the PPF is equal to the slope of $A^{\prime} A^{\prime}$. Consider now the effect of a real exchange rate appreciation, that is, a decline in $P_{T} / P_{N} .{ }^{3}$ The new relative price is represented by the slope of the line $B^{\prime} B^{\prime}$, which is flatter than $A^{\prime} A^{\prime}$. In response to the decline in the relative price of tradables in terms of nontradables, firms choose to produce less tradables and more nontradables. Specifically, the new production mix is given by point $B$, located northwest of point $A$.

The optimality condition (8.5) can be derived more formally as follows. Consider the problem faced by a firm in the traded sector. Its profits are given by revenues from sales of tradables, $P_{T} F_{T}\left(L_{T}\right)$, minus the cost of production, $w L_{T}$, where $w$ denotes the wage rate, that is,

$$
\text { profits in the traded sector }=P_{T} F_{T}\left(L_{T}\right)-w L_{T}
$$

The firm will choose an amount of labor input that maximizes its profits. That is, it will choose $L_{T}$ such that

$$
P_{T} F_{T}^{\prime}\left(L_{T}\right)-w=0 .
$$

This first-order condition is obtained by taking the derivative of profits with respect to $L_{T}$ and setting it equal to zero. The first-order condition says that the firm will equate the value of the marginal product of labor to

[^26]the marginal cost of labor, $w$. A similar relation arises from the profitmaximizing behavior of firms in the nontraded sector:
$$
P_{N} F_{N}^{\prime}\left(L_{N}\right)-w=0
$$

Combining the above two first-order conditions to eliminate $w$ yields equation (8.5).

### 8.2 The income expansion path

Consider now the household's demand for tradable and nontradable consumption. In each period, households derive utility from consumption of traded and nontraded goods. In particular, their preferences are described by the following single-period utility function

$$
\begin{equation*}
U\left(C_{T}, C_{N}\right) \tag{8.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $U(\cdot, \cdot)$ is increasing in both arguments. Figure 8.2 shows the indif-

Figure 8.2: The household's problem in the TNT model

ference curves implied by the utility function given in equation (8.6). The indifference curves are as usual downward sloping and convex toward the origin reflecting the fact that households like both goods and that the marginal rate of substitution of tradables for nontradables (the slope of the indifference curves) is decreasing in $C_{T}$. Also, because more is preferred to less, the level of utility increases as one moves northeast in the space $\left(C_{T}, C_{N}\right)$.

Thus, for example, in figure 8.2 the level of utility is higher on the indifference curve $U^{3}$ than on the indifference curve $U^{1}$.

Suppose the household has decided to spend the amount $Y$ on consumption. How will the household allocate $Y$ to purchases of each of the two goods? The household's budget constraint is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{T} C_{T}+P_{N} C_{N}=Y \tag{8.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

This constraint says that total expenditures on traded and nontraded consumption purchases must equal the amount the household chose to spend on consumption this period, $Y$. In figure 8.2 the budget constraint is given by the straight line connecting points $A$ and $B$. If the household chooses to consume no nontraded goods, then it can consume $Y / P_{T}$ units of traded goods (point A in the figure). On the other hand, if the household chooses to consume no traded goods, it can consume $Y / P_{N}$ units of nontraded goods (point B in the figure). The slope of the budget constraint is given by $-P_{T} / P_{N}$.

The household chooses $C_{T}$ and $C_{N}$ so as to maximize its utility function (8.6) subject to its budget constraint (8.7). The maximum attainable level of utility is reached by consuming a basket of goods on an indifference curve that is tangent to the budget constraint, point C in the figure. At point C , the slope of the indifference curve equals the slope of the budget constraint. To derive this result algebraically, solve (8.7) for $C_{N}$ and use the resulting expression, $C_{N}=Y / P_{N}-P_{T} / P_{N} C_{T}$, to eliminate $C_{N}$ from (8.6). Then the household's problem reduces to choosing $C_{T}$ so as to maximize

$$
U\left(C_{T}, \frac{Y}{P_{N}}-\frac{P_{T}}{P_{N}} C_{T}\right)
$$

The first-order condition of this problem is obtained by taking the derivative with respect to $C_{T}$ and equating it to zero:

$$
U_{T}\left(C_{T}, \frac{Y}{P_{N}}-\frac{P_{T}}{P_{N}} C_{T}\right)-\frac{P_{T}}{P_{N}} U_{N}\left(C_{T}, \frac{Y}{P_{N}}-\frac{P_{T}}{P_{N}} C_{T}\right)=0
$$

where $U_{T}(\cdot, \cdot)$ and $U_{N}(\cdot, \cdot)$ denote the partial derivatives of the utility function with respect to its first and second argument, respectively (or the marginal utilities of consumption of tradables and nontradables). Rearranging terms and using the fact that $Y / P_{N}-P_{T} / P_{N} C_{T}=C_{N}$ yields:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{U_{T}\left(C_{T}, C_{N}\right)}{U_{N}\left(C_{T}, C_{N}\right)}=\frac{P_{T}}{P_{N}} \tag{8.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

The left hand side of this expressions is (minus) the slope of the indifference curve (also known as the marginal rate of substitution between traded and nontraded goods). The right hand side is (minus) the slope of the budget constraint.

Consider the household's optimal consumption choice for different levels of income. Figure 8.3 shows the household's budget constraint for three

Figure 8.3: The income expansion path

different levels of income, $Y_{1}, Y_{2}$, and $Y_{3}$, where $Y_{1}<Y_{2}<Y_{3}$. As income increases, the budget constraint shifts to the right in a parallel fashion. It shifts to the right because given for any given level of consumption of one of the goods, an increase in income allows the household to consume more of the other good. The shift is parallel because the relative price between tradables and nontradables is assumed to be unchanged (recall that the slope of the budget constraint is $-P_{T} / P_{N}$ ). We will assume that both goods are normal, that is, that in response to an increase in income, households choose to increase consumption of both goods. This assumption implies that the optimal consumption basket associated with the income level $Y_{2}$ (point B in the figure) contains more units of both tradable and nontradable goods than the consumption bundle associated with the lower income $Y_{1}$ (point A in the figure), that is, point B is located northeast of point A. Similarly, consumption of both traded and nontraded goods is higher when income is equal to $Y_{3}$ (point C in the figure) than when income is equal to $Y_{2}$. The income expansion path (IEP) is the locus of optimal consumption baskets corresponding to different levels of income, holding constant the relative
price of traded and nontraded goods. Clearly, points A, B, and C must lie on the same income expansion path given by the line $\overline{\mathrm{OD}}$ in figure 8.3.

Income expansion paths have four important characteristics: First, if both goods are normal, then income expansion paths are upward sloping. Second, income expansion paths must begin at the origin. This is because if income is nil, then consumption of both goods must be zero. Third, at the point of intersection with a given IEP, all indifference curves have the same slope. This is because each IEP is constructed for a given relative price $P_{T} / P_{N}$, and because at the optimal consumption allocation, the slope of the indifference curve must be equal to the relative price of the two goods. Fourth, an increase in the relative price of traded in terms of nontraded goods, $P_{T} / P_{N}$, produces a counterclockwise rotation of the IEP.

The intuition behind this last characteristic is that if the relative price of tradables in terms of nontradables goes up, households consume relatively less tradables and more nontradables. Figure 8.4 shows two income expan-

Figure 8.4: The income expansion path and a depreciation of the real exchange rate

sion paths, $\overline{\mathrm{OD}}$ and $\overline{\mathrm{OD}^{\prime}}$. The relative price underlying $\overline{\mathrm{OD}}$ is lower than the relative price underlying $\overline{\mathrm{OD}^{\prime}}$. To see this, consider the slope of any indifference curve as it intersects each of the two IEPs. Take for example the indifference curve $U^{1}$ in figure 8.4. At the point of intersection with $\overline{\mathrm{OD}}$ (point A in the figure), $U^{1}$ is flatter than at the point of intersection with $\overline{\mathrm{OD}^{\prime}}$ (point B). Because at point A the slope of $U^{1}$ is equal to the relative price underlying $\overline{\mathrm{OD}}$, and at point B the slope of $U^{1}$ is equal to the relative
price underlying $\overline{\mathrm{OD}^{\prime}}$, it follows that the relative price associated with $\overline{\mathrm{OD}^{\prime}}$ is higher than the relative price associated with $\overline{\mathrm{OD}}$.

### 8.3 Partial equilibrium

We can now put together the first two building blocks of the model, the production possibility frontier and the income expansion path, to analyze the determination of production, consumption and the real exchange rate given the trade balance. Figure 8.5 illustrates a partial equilibrium. Suppose

Figure 8.5: Partial Equilibrium

that in equilibrium production takes place at point A on the PPF. The equilibrium real exchange rate, $P_{T} / P_{N}$, is given by the slope of the PPF at point A. Suppose that the IEP corresponding to the equilibrium real exchange rate is the line $\overline{\mathrm{OD}}$. By definition, nontraded goods cannot be imported or exported. Therefore, market clearing in the nontraded sector requires that production equals consumption, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{N}=Q_{N} \tag{8.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Given consumption of nontradables, the IEP determines uniquely the level of consumption of tradables (point B in the figure). Because our model does not feature investment in physical capital or government purchases, the trade balance is simply given by the difference between production and consumption of tradables,

$$
\begin{equation*}
T B=Q_{T}-C_{T} \tag{8.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the figure, the trade balance is given by the horizontal distance between points A and B. Because in the figure consumption of tradables exceeds production, the country is running a trade balance deficit.

Consider now the effect of a depreciation of the real exchange rate, that is, an increase in $P_{T} / P_{N}$. Figure 8.6 illustrates this situation. The economy

Figure 8.6: Partial equilibrium: a real exchange rate depreciation

is initially producing at point A and consuming at point B . Because in equilibrium the slope of the PPF must equal the real exchange rate, the depreciation of the real exchange rate induces a change in the production mix to a point like D , where the PPF is steeper than at point A . This shift in the composition of production has a clear intuition: as the price of tradables goes up relative to that of nontradables, firms find it profitable to expand production of traded goods at the expense of nontraded goods. On the demand side of the economy, the real exchange rate depreciation causes a counterclockwise rotation in the income expansion path from $\overline{\mathrm{OC}}$ to $\overline{\mathrm{OC}^{\prime}}$. Having determined the new production position and the new IEP, we can easily determine the new equilibrium consumption basket (point E in the figure) and trade balance (the horizontal distance between points D and E ).

Summing up, in response to the real exchange rate depreciation, the economy produces more tradables and less nontradables, and consumes less tradables as well as nontradables. As a result of the expansion in the production of tradables and the contraction in consumption of tradables, the economy ends up generating a smaller trade balance deficit. In fact, in the case shown in figure 8.6 the trade balance becomes positive. Figure 8.7
depicts the relationship between trade deficits, the real exchange rate, con-

Figure 8.7: Partial equilibrium: endogenous variables as functions of the trade deficit




sumption, and production.
The TNT model can help understand the effects of external shocks that force countries to sharply adjust their current accounts. An example of this type of shock is the Debt Crisis of Developing Countries of the early 1980s, which we will discuss in more detail in chapter 9. In 1982, adverse conditions in international financial markets caused credit to dry up for highly indebted countries, particularly in Latin America. As a consequence, debtor countries, which until that moment were running large current account deficits, were all of the sudden forced to generate large trade balance surpluses in order to be able to service their debts. As predicted by the TNT model, the required external adjustment produced sharp real exchange rate depreciations, large contractions in aggregate spending, and costly reallocations of production away from the nontraded sector and toward the traded sector.

Table 8.1 illustrates the effect of the Debt Crisis on Chile's trade balance and real exchange rate. In terms of the TNT model, the intuition behind

Table 8.1: Chile, trade balance and real exchange rate depreciation, 19791985

| Year | $\Delta e$ <br> $\%$ | $T B$ <br> $G D P$ <br> $\%$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1979 |  | -1.7 |
| 1980 |  | -2.8 |
| 1981 |  | -8.2 |
| 1982 | 20.6 | 0.3 |
| 1983 | 27.5 | 5.0 |
| 1984 | 5.1 | 1.9 |
| 1985 | 32.6 | 5.3 |

the effect of the Debt Crisis on the affected developing countries is clear. In response to the shutdown of external credit, countries needed to generate trade balance surpluses to pay interest and principal on existing foreign debt. In order to generate a trade balance surplus, aggregate spending must decline. Given the relative price of tradables in terms of nontradables, $P_{T} / P_{N}$, households will cut consumption of both traded and nontraded goods. At the same time, given the relative price of tradables in terms of nontradables, production of nontradables should be unchanged. This means that an excess supply of nontradables would emerge. The only way that the market for nontradables can clear is if the relative price of nontradables falls-that is, if the real exchange rate depreciates - inducing firms to produce less nontradables and households to consume more nontradables.

The tools developed thus far allow us to determine all variables of interest given the trade deficit, but do not tell us how the trade deficit itself is determined. Another way of putting this is that our model has more variables than equations. The equilibrium conditions of our model are: equations (8.1), (8.2), and (8.3) describing the PPF, equation (8.5), which ensures that the real exchange rate equals the slope of the PPF, equation (8.8) describing the IEP, equation (8.9), which guarantees market clearing in the nontraded sector, and equation (8.10), which defines the trade balance. These are 7 equations in 8 unknowns: $Q_{N}, Q_{T}, L_{N}, L_{T}, C_{N}, C_{T}, T B$, and $P_{T} / P_{N}$. To "close" the model, we need a theory to determine $T B$. More specifically, we need a theory that explains households' consumption decisions over time. In the next section, we merge the static partial equilibrium model developed in
this section with the intertemporal approach to the current account studied in earlier chapters to obtain a dynamic general equilibrium model.

### 8.4 General equilibrium

To determine the equilibrium level of the trade balance, we introduce an intertemporal dimension to the TNT model. Assume that households live for two periods and have preferences described by the following intertemporal utility function

$$
U\left(C_{T 1}, C_{N 1}\right)+\beta U\left(C_{T 2}, C_{N 2}\right),
$$

where $C_{T 1}$ and $C_{N 1}$ denote, respectively, consumption of tradables and nontradables in period 1, and $C_{T 2}$ and $C_{N 2}$ denote the corresponding variables in period 2. The function $U(\cdot, \cdot)$ is the single period utility function given in (8.6), and $0<\beta<1$ is a constant parameter, called subjective discount factor, which determines the value households assign to future utility.

In the previous section, we deduced that, all other things constant, in equilibrium both $C_{T}$ and $C_{N}$ are increasing functions of the trade deficit, $-T B$ (see figure 8.7). Thus, we can define an indirect utility function $\tilde{U}(-T B) \equiv U\left(C_{T}, C_{N}\right)$ with $C_{T}$ and $C_{N}$ replaced by increasing functions of $-T B$. Clearly, the indirect utility function is increasing in $-T B$, because both $C_{T}$ and $C_{N}$ are increasing in $-T B$. We can therefore write the intertemporal utility function as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tilde{U}\left(-T B_{1}\right)+\beta \tilde{U}\left(-T B_{2}\right) \tag{8.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Figure 8.8 shows the indifference curves associated with the indirect utility function (8.11). The indifference curves have the conventional form. They are downward sloping and convex to the origin. As one moves northeast in the space ( $-T B_{1},-T B_{2}$ ) utility increases.

The household's budget constraint in period 1 is given by

$$
C_{T 1}+\frac{P_{N 1}}{P_{T 1}} C_{N 1}+B_{1}^{*}=\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}+Q_{T 1}+\frac{P_{N 1}}{P_{T 1}} Q_{N 1}
$$

The right hand side of this expression represents the sources of wealth of the household measured in terms of tradables. The households initial asset holdings including including interest are $\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}$, where $B_{0}^{*}$ are initial holdings of foreign bonds denominated in units of traded goods, and $r_{0}$ is the return on the initial holdings of foreign bonds. The second source of wealth is the value of output in period $1, Q_{T 1}+\left(P_{N 1} / P_{T 1}\right) Q_{N 1}$, measured

Figure 8.8: The indirect utility function: indifference curves

in terms of tradables. Note that we are measuring nontraded output in terms of tradables by multiplying it by the relative price of nontradables in terms of tradables. The left hand side of the budget constraint represents the uses of wealth. The household allocates its wealth to purchases of consumption goods, $C_{T 1}+\frac{P_{N 1}}{P_{T 1}} C_{N 1}$, and to purchases of foreign bonds, $B_{1}^{*}$. In equilibrium the market clearing condition in the nontraded sector requires that consumption of nontradables be equal to production of nontradables, that is, $C_{N 1}=Q_{N 1}$ (equation (8.9)). In addition, we have that $T B_{1}=Q_{T 1}-C_{T 1}$ (equation (8.10)). Thus, the household's budget constraint in period 1 can be written as

$$
-T B_{1}+B_{1}^{*}=\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}
$$

Similarly, in period 2 the budget constraint takes the form

$$
-T B_{2}+B_{2}^{*}=\left(1+r_{1}\right) B_{1}^{*},
$$

where $r_{1}$ denotes the domestic interest rate paid on holdings of the foreign bond between periods 1 and 2. Foreign bonds are measured in terms of tradables. Thus, $r_{1}$ is the real interest rate in terms of tradables. ${ }^{4}$ We will

[^27]assume that the economy is small and that there is free capital mobility, so that the domestic interest rate on tradables must be equal to the world interest rate, $r^{*}$, that is,
$$
r_{1}=r^{*} .
$$

By the no-Ponzi-game constraint $B_{2}^{*} \geq 0$ and the fact that no household is willing leave outstanding assets in period 2, we have

$$
B_{2}^{*}=0
$$

Combining the above four equations to eliminate $B_{1}^{*}, B_{2}^{*}$, and $r_{1}$, we get the following lifetime budget constraint

$$
\begin{equation*}
-T B_{1}-\frac{T B_{2}}{1+r^{*}}=\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*} \tag{8.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

This budget constraint says that the present discounted value of current and future trade deficits must be equal to the household's initial foreign asset holdings including interest payments. This way of writing the lifetime budget constraint should be familiar from earlier lectures. Indeed, we derived an identical expression in the context of a single-good, endowment economy (equation (2.7)). Figure 8.9 shows the lifetime budget constraint (8.12). The slope of the budget constraint is negative and given by $-\left(1+r^{*}\right)$. If $-T B_{2}=0$, then in period 1 the economy can run a trade deficit equal to its entire initial wealth, that is, $-T B_{1}=\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}$ (point A in the figure). Alternatively, if $-T B_{1}=0$, then $-T B_{2}=\left(1+r^{*}\right)\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}$ (point B). The fact that at point A the trade deficit in period $1,-T B_{1}$, is positive means initial asset holdings are positive $\left(\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}>0\right)$. But this need not be the case. If the country was an initial debtor $\left(\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}<0\right)$, then the budget constraint would be a line like the one connecting points C and D . In this case, point C is on the negative range of the horizontal axis indicating that even if the trade balance is zero in period 2 , the country must generate a trade surplus in period 1 in order to pay back its initial debt.

In equilibrium, households choose trade deficits in periods 1 and 2 so as to maximize their lifetime utility. This situation is attained at a point on the budget constraint that is tangent to an indifference curve (point A in figure 8.10). This implies that at the equilibrium allocation, the slope of the

[^28]Figure 8.9: The intertemporal budget constraint

indifference curve is equal to the slope of the budget constraint. To derive this result formally, solve the budget constraint (8.12) for $-T B_{1}$ and use the result to eliminate $-T B_{1}$ from the indirect utility function (8.11), which yields

$$
\tilde{U}\left(\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}-\frac{-T B_{2}}{1+r^{*}}\right)+\beta \tilde{U}\left(-T B_{2}\right) .
$$

To find the optimal level of the trade deficit in period 2 , take the derivative of this expression with respect to $-T B_{2}$ and set it equal to zero, to get

$$
\tilde{U}^{\prime}\left(\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}-\frac{-T B_{2}}{1+r^{*}}\right)\left(\frac{-1}{1+r^{*}}\right)+\beta \tilde{U}^{\prime}\left(-T B_{2}\right)=0
$$

Rearranging terms and taking into account that $\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}-\left(-T B_{2}\right) /(1+$ $\left.r^{*}\right)=-T B_{1}$ we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{\tilde{U}^{\prime}\left(-T B_{1}\right)}{\beta \tilde{U}^{\prime}\left(-T B_{2}\right)}=1+r^{*} \tag{8.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

The left hand side of this equation is (minus) the slope of the indifference curve, and the right hand side is (minus) the slope of the budget constraint.

Figure 8.10: General equilibrium


With this optimality condition we have "closed" the model. By closing the model we mean that we now have as many equilibrium conditions as we have endogenous variables. To recapitulate, in the previous subsection we obtained 7 equilibrium conditions for each period (equations (8.1), (8.2), (8.3), (8.5), (8.8), (8.9), and (8.10)) and 8 unknowns for each period ( $Q_{N}$, $Q_{T}, L_{N}, L_{T}, C_{N}, C_{T}, T B$, and $\left.P_{T} / P_{N}\right)$. In this subsection, we obtained 2 additional equilibrium conditions, equations (8.12) and (8.13), by studying the intertemporal choice problem of the household. ${ }^{5}$ Therefore, we now have 16 equations in 16 unknowns, so that the model is closed. In the next subsection we put the model to work by using it to address a number of real life questions.

### 8.5 Wealth shocks and the real exchange rate

Consider the effect of a decline in a country's net foreign asset position on the real exchange rate and the trade balance. Figure 8.11 depicts the situation of a country that has a positive initial net foreign asset position $\left(\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}\right)$ given by point A . The equilibrium is given by point B where

[^29]Figure 8.11: A negative wealth shock

the intertemporal budget constraint is tangent to an indifference curve. A decline in the initial net foreign asset position causes a parallel shift in the budget constraint to the left. In the figure, the change in the initial wealth position is given by the distance between points A and A'. The new equilibrium is given by point $\mathrm{B}^{\prime}$, where the trade deficits in both periods are lower. The intuition behind this result is straightforward: as the country becomes poorer it must reduce aggregate spending. Households choose to adjust in both periods because in that way they achieve a smoother path of consumption over time.

Having established the effect of the wealth shock on the trade balance, we can use figure 8.7 to deduce the response of the remaining endogenous variables of the model. The negative wealth effect produces a decline in consumption of tradables and nontradables in both periods. This result makes sense, given that the economy has become poorer. In addition, the real exchange rate depreciates, or tradables become more expensive relative to nontradables. This change in relative prices is necessary in order to induce firms to produce less nontradables when the demand for this type of good falls. Finally, output increases in the traded sector and declines in the nontraded sector. Thus, the improvement in the trade balance is the
result of both a decline in consumption and an expansion in production of tradables.

Wealth shocks provide an example of long-lasting deviations from PPP that arise even if productivity is not changing, and thus represent an alternative explanation of movements in the real exchange rate to the one offered by the Balassa-Samuelson model.

Are the predictions of the TNT model consistent with the observed response of countries that faced large wealth shocks? An example of a large negative wealth shock is World War II. For example, in Great Britain large military spending and structural damage wiped out much of the country's net foreign asset position and resulted in a protracted depreciation of the pound vis-à-vis the U.S. dollar.

### 8.6 World interest rate shocks

It has been argued that in developing countries, variations in the real exchange rate are to a large extent due to movements in the world interest rate. For example, Guillermo Calvo, Leonardo Leiderman, and Carmen Reinhart studied the commovement between real exchange rates and U.S. interest rates for ten Latin American countries between 1988 and $1992 .{ }^{6}$ They find that around half of the variance in real exchange rates can be explained by variations in U.S. interest rates. In particular, they find that in periods in which the world interest rate is relatively low, the developing countries included in their study experience real exchange rate appreciations. Conversely, periods of high world interest rates are associated with depreciations of the real exchange rate.

Is the TNT model consistent with the observed negative correlation between interest rates and the real exchange rate? Consider a small open economy, which, for simplicity, is assumed to start with zero initial wealth. Suppose further that the country is borrowing in period 1. The situation is illustrated in figure 8.12. The budget constraint crosses the origin, reflecting the fact that the initial net foreign asset position is nil. In the initial situation, the world interest rate is $r^{*}$. The equilibrium allocation is given by point A . The country is running a trade balance deficit in period 1 and a surplus in period 2 . Suppose now that the world interest rate increases from $r^{*}$ to $r^{* \prime}>r^{*}$. The higher interest rate causes a clockwise rotation of the

[^30]Figure 8.12: An increase in the world interest rate

budget constraint. The new equilibrium is point B , where the steeper budget constraint is tangent to an indifference curve. At point B , the economy is running a smaller trade deficit in period 1 than at point A . The improvement in the trade balance is the consequence of two reinforcing effects. First, the increase in the interest rate produces a substitution effect that induces households to postpone consumption and increase savings. Second, because the economy is borrowing in period 1 , the increase in the interest rate makes domestic households poorer, thus causing a decline in aggregate spending.

It follows from figure 8.7 that the decline in the trade balance in period 1 caused by the interest rate hike is accompanied by a decline in consumption of tradables and nontradables, an expansion in traded output and a contraction in the nontraded sector. Finally, the real exchange rate depreciates. The TNT model is therefore consistent with the observation that high interest rates are associated with real depreciations of the exchange rate.

### 8.7 Terms-of-trade shocks

In order to incorporate terms-of-trade (TOT), we must augment the model to allow for two kinds of traded goods: importables and exportables. We will assume, as we did in our earlier discussion of terms of trade (subsection 2.3.3), that the country's supply of tradables is exported and not con-
sumed, and that all traded goods consumed by domestic households are imported. The distinction between importables and exportables makes matters more complicated. To compensate, we will simplify the model's structure by assuming that the supplies of tradables and nontradables are exogenous. That is, we will study the effects of TOT shocks in an endowment economy. The only difference with our earlier treatment of TOT shocks is therefore the presence of nontradable goods.

Households consume importable goods and nontraded goods, and are endowed with fixed quantities of exportables and nontradables. Let $C_{M}$ denote consumption of importables and $Q_{X}$ the endowment of exportable goods. Let $P_{X} / P_{M}$ denote the terms of trade, defined as the relative price of exportables in terms of importables. In this endowment economy, the PPF collapses to a single point, namely, the endowment of tradables and nontradables $\left(Q_{X}, Q_{N}\right)$. Point A in figure 8.13 represents the value of the economy's

Figure 8.13: An improvement in the terms of trade

endowment. In order to measure imports and exports in the same units on the horizontal axis, the endowment of exportables is expressed in terms of importables by multiplying $Q_{X}$ by the terms of trade, $P_{X} / P_{M}$. Suppose that in equilibrium the economy is running a trade surplus equal to the horizontal distance between points A and B. It follows that the income ex-
pansion path, given by the locus $\overline{\mathrm{OC}}$, must cross point B . The real exchange rate, now defined as $P_{M} / P_{N}$, can be read of the slope of the indifference curve at point $B$.

Suppose that the economy experiences a permanent improvement in the terms of trade, that is, an increase in $P_{X} / P_{M}$ in both periods. Because the value of the endowment of exportables went up, point A in figure 8.13 shifts horizontally to the right to point A'. At the same time, the permanent TOT shock is likely to have a negligible effect on the trade balance. The reason is that a permanent increase in the TOT is equivalent to a permanent positive income shock, to which households respond by increasing consumption in both periods in the same magnitude as the increase in income, thus leaving the trade balance unchanged. The fact that the trade balance is unchanged implies that in the new equilibrium consumption of importables must increase in the same magnitude as the increase in the value of the endowment of tradables. The new consumption point is given by B ' in the figure. The distance between $A$ and $B$ is the same as the distance between $A^{\prime}$ and $B^{\prime}$. The new income expansion path must go through point B'. This means that the IEP rotates clockwise, or, equivalently, that the real exchange rate appreciates ( $P_{M} / P_{N}$ goes down) in response to the improvement in TOT. The intuition behind this result is clear. The permanent increase in income caused by the improvement in TOT induces households to demand more of both goods, importables and nontradables. Because the supply of nontradables is fixed, the relative price of nontradables (the reciprocal of the real exchange rate) must increase to discourage consumption of nontradables, thereby restoring equilibrium in the nontraded sector.

Suppose now that the improvement in the terms of trade is temporary rather than permanent, that is, that $P_{X} / P_{M}$ increases only in period 1. In this case, households will try to smooth consumption by saving part of the positive income shock in period 1. As a result the trade balance in period 1 improves. In terms of figure 8.13, the new consumption position, point B", is such that the distance between B " and B is smaller than the distance between $\mathrm{A}^{\prime}$ and A , reflecting the improvement in the trade balance. Therefore, as in the case of a permanent TOT shock, in response to a temporary TOT shock the IEP shifts clockwise. However, the rotation is smaller than under a permanent TOT shock. Consequently, the real exchange rate appreciation is also smaller under a temporary TOT shock than under a permanent one.

## Chapter 9

## The Macroeconomics of External Debt

### 9.1 The debt crisis of developing countries of the 1980s

In 1982, the government of Mexico announced that it could no longer meet its external financial obligations. This episode marked the beginning of what today is known as the Developing Country Debt Crisis. Mexico's decision was followed by similar measures by other highly indebted developing countries, particularly in Latin America. In this section we present an analytical overview of the events leading to the Debt Crisis, its economic consequences, and its reversal with the capital inflows of the 1990s.

The fact that many countries were affected simultaneously suggests that international factors played an important role in the financial crisis of the early 1980s.

A number of external factors led to a large accumulation of debt by developing countries in the second half of the 1970s. The sharp oil price increase in 1973-74 led to huge deposits by middle eastern countries in international banks. Flushed with funds, commercial banks were eager to lend. In addition, in general, bankers in industrialized countries strongly felt that developing countries could never go bankrupt. Two other external factors were important in explaining the unusual amount of capital that flowed to Latin America and other developing countries in the late 1970s: low real interest rates and large growth in exports.

There were also domestic government policies in Latin America that encouraged borrowing in the late 1970s. First, financial liberalization, led to
large expansions in lending, as interest rate controls in the banking sector were removed. In some countries, such as Argentina and Chile, the government provided loan guarantees. Thus, domestic banks had incentives to borrow at very high rates and invested in risky projects. In fact, it was as if the government was subsidizing foreign borrowing by domestic banks.

A second domestic factor was the exchange rate policy followed by a number of Latin American countries. In the mid 1970s, countries in the Southern Cone of Latin America pegged their currencies to the U.S. dollar as a way to fight inflation. This policy resulted in a significant real exchange rate appreciation (i.e., in a fall in $S \cdot P^{*} / P$ ) and large current account deficits. Households expanded purchases of imported goods, especially durables such as cars and electrodomestics.

In the early 1980s, there was a dramatic change in the economic environment. World interest rates increased sharply due to the anti-inflationary policy in the U.S. led by Federal Reserve chairman Paul Volker (see table 9.1). In addition, the terms of trade deteriorated for the debtor countries as raw

Table 9.1: Interest rates in the late 1970s and early 1980s

| Year | Nominal <br> LIBOR |
| :---: | :---: |
| 1978 | 8.3 |
| 1979 | 12.0 |
| 1980 | 14.2 |
| 1981 | 16.5 |

Source: Andres Bianchi et al., "Adjustment in Latin America, 1981-86," in V. Corbo, M. Goldstein, and M. Khan, ed., Growth Oriented Adjustment Programs, Washington, D.C.: International Monetary Fund and The World Bank, 1987.
material prices fell. As a result, the real interest rate faced by developing countries rose dramatically (see figure 9.1).

Debtor countries were highly vulnerable to the rise in world interest rates because much of the debt carried a floating rate. In Latin America, $65 \%$ of the foreign debt had a floating rate. Thus, debt service increased rapidly and unexpectedly in the early 1980s. The combination of higher interest rates and lower export prices resulted in sharp increases in interest

Figure 9.1: Interest rates and export prices in Latin America (1972-1986)


Note: The real Libor rate is constructed by subtracting the rate of change in export prices from the nominal Libor rate.
Source: Andres Bianchi et al., "Adjustment in Latin America, 1981-86," in V. Corbo, M. Goldstein, and M. Khan, ed., Growth Oriented Adjustment Programs, Washington, D.C.: International Monetary Fund and The World Bank, 1987.
payments relative to export earnings in highly indebted developing countries (see table 9.2). External lending to developing countries and inflows of foreign investment abruptly stopped in 1982. For all developing countries, new lending was 38 billion in 1981, 20 billion in 1982, and only 3 billion in 1983.

Domestic factors also contributed to the slowdown in capital inflows. The exchange rate policy of pegging the domestic currency to the U.S. dollar followed by countries in the Southern Cone of Latin America was believed to be unsustainable, in part because governments did fail to implement the required fiscal reforms. As a result, by the early 1980s expectations of real depreciation of the domestic currency induced domestic residents to invest in foreign assets (capital flight). In addition, the risky projects taken up by banks following the financial liberalization of the late 1970s and encouraged by government guarantees resulted in systemic banking failures.

As a result of the shutdown of foreign credit, countries were forced to generate large current account surpluses in order to continue to service, at least in part, their external obligations (see figure 9.2).

What does our model say about the macroeconomic consequences of a sharp world interest rate increase for a debtor country whose debt is at

Table 9.2: Interest payments in selected Latin American countries. Average 1980-81.

| Country | Percent of Debt <br> at floating rate | Interest Payment to <br> Exports ratio (\%) |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Argentina | 58 | 15 |
| Brazil | 64 | 28 |
| Colombia | 39 | 16 |
| Chile | 58 | 28 |
| Mexico | 73 | 19 |
| All Latin America | 65 | 28 |

Source: Andres Bianchi et al., "Adjustment in Latin America, 1981-86," in V. Corbo, M. Goldstein, and M. Khan, ed., Growth Oriented Adjustment Programs, Washington, D.C.: International Monetary Fund and The World Bank, 1987.
floating rates? Figure 9.3 depicts an endowment economy that starts with a zero initial net foreign asset position $\left(\left(1+r_{0}\right) B_{0}^{*}=0\right)$. The endowment point, $\left(Q_{1}, Q_{2}\right)$, is given by point $A$ in the figure. The initial equilibrium is at point B , where the economy is running a current account deficit (or borrowing from abroad an amount) equal to $Q_{1}-C_{1}$ in period 1. The situation in period 1 resembles the behavior of most Latin American countries in the late 1970s, which, taking advantage of soft international credit conditions borrowed heavily in international capital markets. Consider now an increase in the world interest rate like the one that took place in the early 1980s. The interest rate hike entailed an increase in the amount of resources needed to service not only newly assumed obligations but also existing debts. This is because, as we argued above, most of the developing country debt was stipulated at floating rates. In terms of our graph, the increase in the interest rate from $r^{*}$ to $r^{*}+\Delta$ causes a clockwise rotation of the budget constraint around point A.

We assume that households took on their debt obligations under the expectations that the world interest rate would be $r^{*}$. We also assume that the interest rate hike takes place after the country assumes its financial obligations in period 1 . However, in period 2 the country must pay the higher interest rate on the financial obligations assumed in period 1 because those obligations stipulated a floating rate. Therefore, households cannot reoptimize and choose point $B^{\prime}$, featuring a lower trade deficit-and hence

Figure 9.2: The trade balance in Latin America (1974-1990)


Source: Economic Commission for Latin America and the Caribbean (ECLAC), Preliminary Overview of the Economy of Latin America and the Caribbean, Santiago, Chile, December 1990.
lower foreign debt - in period 1. They are stuck with $T B_{1}=Q_{1}-C_{1}$. This means that the new position of the economy is point $C$ on the new budget constraint and vertically aligned with point $B$. The increase in the world interest rate forces the country to generate a large trade balance in period 2, given by $Q_{2}-C_{2}^{\prime \prime}$ in order to service the debt contracted in period 1. Note that the trade surplus in period 2 is much larger than it would have been had the country been able to re-optimize its borrowing in period $1\left(Q_{2}-C_{2}^{\prime}\right)$. It is clear from figure 8.7 that the improvement in the trade balance leads to a depreciation of the real exchange rate and a contraction in aggregate spending. The response of the economy in period 2 captures pretty well the adjustment that took place in most Latin American countries in the wake of the Debt Crisis. Figure 9.2 documents the spectacular trade balance reversal that took place in Latin America in 1982. Table 8.1, shows that in Chile, the improvement in the current account in the aftermath of the debt crisis

Figure 9.3: Floating Interest Rates and Current Account Adjustment

was accompanied by a dramatic (and traumatic) real exchange rate depreciation. The Chilean experience is not atypical. Large real depreciations were observed across Latin America after 1982.

### 9.2 The resurgence of capital inflows to developing countries in the 1990s

In the 1990s, developing countries in Asia and Latin America experienced a resurgence of capital inflows. About $\$ 670$ billion of foreign capital flowed to these countries in the 5 years from 1990 to 1994, as measured by the total balance on the financial account. This is 5 times larger than the $\$ 133$ billion of total inflows during the previous 5 years.

An article by Guillermo Calvo, Leonardo Leiderman, and Carmen Reinhart analyzes the causes of the resurgence of capital inflows to developing countries in the 1990s and argues that a number of factors were at work. ${ }^{1}$ The widespread nature of the phenomenon suggests that global factors were

[^31]especially important. Many of these factors are the same that led to high capital inflows to the region in the late 1970s. Domestic factors also played a role in determining the magnitude and composition of capital flows.

First, interest rates in international financial markets in the 1990s were relatively low. After peaking in 1989, interest rates in the U.S. declined steadily in the early 1990s. In 1992 interest rates reached their lowest level since the 1960s. This attracted capital to high-yield investments in Asia and Latin America. Second, in the early 1990s, the U.S., Japan, and several countries in Western Europe were in recession, which implied that they offered fewer investment opportunities. Third, rapid growth in international diversification and international capital market integration, facilitated in part by financial deregulation in the U.S. and Europe, allowed mutual funds and life insurance companies to diversify their portfolios to include emerging market assets. Fourth, many developing countries made progress toward improving relations with external creditors. Fifth, many developing countries adopted sound fiscal and monetary policies and market-oriented reforms such as trade and capital liberalization (Chile, Bolivia, and Mexico in the 1980s, Argentina, Brazil, Ecuador, and Peru in the 1990s). Finally, there seemed to be what some researchers call contagion. The opening of a large developing economy to capital markets (like Mexico in the late 1980s) can produce positive externalities that facilitate capital inflows to other neighboring countries.

As shown in table 9.3, the capital inflows of the 1990s produced a number of important macroeconomic consequences, which are strikingly similar to those that paved the way for the debt crisis in the late 1970s: (1) The counterpart of the surge in capital inflows was a large increase in current account deficits, which materialized via investment booms and declines in savings. (2) In Latin America, the surge in capital inflows led to large real exchange appreciations. By contrast, in Asia such appreciation was observed only in the Philippines. (3) The decline in savings was associated with increases in consumption of (mostly imported) durable goods. (4) A significant fraction of capital inflows were channeled to accumulation of foreign exchange reserves by central banks.

### 9.3 The Debt Burden

A country's debt burden can be measured by its debt-to-GDP ratio,

$$
\text { Debt burden }=\frac{D}{G D P},
$$

Table 9.3: Selected recipients of large capital inflows: macroeconomic performance 1988-1994

| Country | Year Capital <br> Inflow began | Cumulative <br> RER appreciation | Average <br> CA/GDP |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Asia |  |  |  |
| Indonesia | 1990 | -6.2 | -2.5 |
| Malaysia | 1989 | -3.9 | -4.8 |
| Philippines | 1992 | 20.9 | -4.2 |
| Thailand | 1988 | 1.9 | -6.0 |
| Latin America |  |  |  |
| Argentina | 1991 | 20.1 | -3.1 |
| Brazil | 1992 | 57.9 | -.2 |
| Chile | 1990 | 13.5 | -1.8 |
| Colombia | 1991 | 37.1 | -4.2 |
| Mexico | 1989 | 23.4 | -6.8 |

Source: "Inflows of Capital to Developing Countries in the 1990s" by G. Calvo, L. Leiderman, and C. Reinhart, Journal of Economic Perspectives, Spring 1996.
where $D$ denotes the country's stock of external debt and GDP denotes gross domestic product, both measured in terms of tradables. A notable characteristic of the debt crisis was that the debt burden of developing countries rose rather than fell. Table 9.4 shows that the debt burden of Argentina,

Table 9.4: The evolution of the debt/GNP ratio in selected countries, 19801985

|  | $\frac{D}{G D P}$ |  |  |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1980 | 1982 | 1985 |
| Argentina | .48 | .84 | .84 |
| Brazil | .31 | .36 | .49 |
| Mexico | .30 | .53 | .55 |

Source: Jeffrey D. Sachs and Felipe Larrain B., Macroeconomics in the Global Economy, Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, New Jersey, 1993, Table 22-9.

Brazil, and Mexico was 18 to 36 percentage points higher in 1985 than in 1980. The reason why the observed increase in the debt-to-GDP ratio is surprising is that, as we discussed in the previous section, with the onset of the debt crisis the flow of capital to developing countries came to an abrupt halt. Therefore, the observed rise in the debt burden must have been driven by a decline in GDP rather than an increase in debt.

The reason for the sharp decline in GDP is, among other factors, that large real exchange rate depreciations lead to a decline in the value of domestic output in terms of tradables. Domestic output in terms of tradables is the sum of tradable output and nontradable output measured in terms of tradables, that is,

$$
\text { GDP in terms of tradables }=Q_{T}+\frac{P_{N}}{P_{T}} Q_{N} .
$$

In response to a real exchange rate depreciation the production of tradables increases and that of of nontradables declines. The value of domestic output of nontradables measured in terms of tradables falls because both $Q_{N}$ and $P_{N} / P_{T}$ fall. On the other hand, production of tradables increases.

How can we determine that the net effect on output in terms of tradables is negative? Let's use the TNT model developed in chapter 8. Consider
a small open economy that experiences a sharp deterioration of its real exchange rate. Suppose that initially the country produces at point A in figure 9.4. The equilibrium real exchange rate is given by the negative of

Figure 9.4: The effect of a real depreciation on the value of GDP in terms of tradables

the slope of the PPF at point A and GDP in terms of tradables is given by point A', which is the sum of $Q_{T}^{A}$ and $\left(P_{N}^{A} / P_{T}^{A}\right) Q_{N}^{A}{ }^{2}{ }^{2}$ Suppose now that the real exchange rate depreciates and as a consequence equilibrium production takes place at point $B$ on the PPF. The new real exchange rate $P_{T}^{B} / P_{N}^{B}$ is equal to the negative of the slope of the PPF at point $B$. As the relative price of tradables rises, production of tradables increases from $Q_{T}^{A}$ to $Q_{T}^{B}$ and that of nontradables falls from $Q_{N}^{A}$ to $Q_{N}^{B}$. The new value of GDP in terms of tradables is given by point $\mathrm{B}^{\prime}$, which is equal to $Q_{T}^{B}+\left(P_{N}^{B} / P_{T}^{B}\right) Q_{N}^{B}$. A real exchange rate depreciation thus causes a decline in the value of a country's GDP in terms of tradables and as a consequence implies that the country must spend a larger fraction of its GDP in servicing the external debt.

[^32]Table 9.5: Initial situation

|  | Good state | Bad state |
| :--- | ---: | ---: |
| Probability of state | $\frac{1}{3}$ | $\frac{2}{3}$ |
| Face value = 100 |  |  |
| Receipt of creditors | 100 | 25 |
| Expected repayment: 50 |  |  |
| Secondary market price:0.50 |  |  |

### 9.4 Debt Reduction Schemes

Soon after the debt crisis of 1982, it became clear to debtor countries, creditors, and multinational organizations, such as the IMF and the World Bank, that full repayment of the developing country debt was no longer realistic and policy makers started to think about debt reduction schemes as a possible solution to the debt crisis. ${ }^{3}$

By the late 1980s the debt of many developing countries was trading in the secondary market at significant discounts, often as low as 50 percent of its face or par value, reflecting the fact that market participants thought that the likelihood that the country would ever be able to fully repay its debt was very low. At the time many policy makers and economists argued that in such a situation it would be best to "face reality" and reduce a country's debt to what it would be able to pay. The idea was that the face value of the outstanding debt should be adjusted so that the debt would be trading around par and the adjustment should take the form of creditors forgiving part of the debt. This idea was not very often implemented because typically it is not in the creditor's interest to forgive debt unilaterally. We first show why debt forgiveness is often not in the creditor's interest.

### 9.4.1 Unilateral Debt Forgiveness

Consider the situation of a country that owes $\$ 100$. Assume that there is some uncertainty about whether the country will be able to repay its debt in full. In particular, suppose that there are two possible outcomes (see table 9.5). Either the country will be able to repay its debt in full, we refer to this scenario as the good state. Or it will only be able to pay 25 , we call this the bad state. Suppose that the good state occurs with probability $1 / 3$

[^33]Table 9.6: Unilateral debt forgiveness of 50

|  | Good state | Bad state |
| :--- | ---: | ---: |
| Probability of state | $\frac{1}{3}$ | $\frac{2}{3}$ |
| D $=50$ |  | 25 |
| Receipt of creditors | 50 |  |
| Expected repayment: $=33.33$ |  |  |
| Secondary market price $:=0.67$ |  |  |

(so that bad state occurs with probability $2 / 3$ ). Thus,

$$
\text { expected repayment to creditors }=100 \times 1 / 3+25 \times 2 / 3=50 .
$$

This means that the country's debt, whose face value is 100 , is indeed worth only 50 . The price of each unit of debt in the secondary market is accordingly only 0.50 :

$$
\text { secondary market price }=\frac{\text { Expected repayment }}{\text { Face value of the debt }}=\frac{50}{100}=0.50
$$

Suppose now that the creditors forgive 50 units of debt. Then the remaining debt outstanding is only $50(D=50)$. What is the new secondary market price? As shown in table 9.6 , in the bad state the country can again only pay 25 but in the good state it will pay the face value of the debt, which, after the debt reduction, is 50 . Expected receipts of the creditors then are: $50 \times 1 / 3+$ $25 \times 2 / 3=33.33$. The secondary market price rises to $33.33 / 50=.67$. The loss from debt forgiveness to creditors is the difference between the expected repayment without debt forgiveness, 50 , and the expected repayment with debt forgiveness, 33.33 , that is, 16.67 . Clearly, in this example creditors will never agree to debt forgiveness. The problem is that in this situation, debt forgiveness does not inprove the debtor's capacity to pay in the bad state. It simply makes the debtor country's life easy in the good state, which is precicely the one in which it can afford to pay back.

### 9.4.2 Debt Overhang

However, in reality creditors sometimes do agree to forgive debt. For example, at the G-7 Economic Summit held in Cologne, Germany in June 1999, rich countries launched a program, dubbed the Cologne Initiative, aimed at reducing the debt burden of the so-called Highly Indebted Poor Countries
(HIPCs). ${ }^{4}$ To understand why it can be in the creditor's interest to forgive debt, it is important to note that one unrealistic assumption of the above example is that the ability of the debtor to pay is independent of the size of his debt obligations. There are reasons to believe that debtors are more likely to default on their debts the larger is the face value of debt. One reason why this is so is that if $D$ is very large, then the benefits of efforts to improve the economic situation in the debtor country mainly go to the creditors (in the form of large debt-service-related outflows), giving the debtor country very little incentives to improve its economic fundamentals. Another reason why debt repudiation might become more likely as the level of debt gets high is that the debt burden might ultimately appear as a tax on domestic capital implicit in the government's need to collect large amounts of resources to meet external obligations, and thus act as a disincentive for domestic investment. The idea that the probability of repayment is low when the level of debt is high has come to be known as the debt overhang argument.

We can formalize the debt overhang argument as follows. Let $\pi$ be the probability that the good state occurs. Assume that $\pi$ depends negatively on $D$ :

$$
\pi=\pi(D) ; \quad \frac{d \pi(D)}{d D}<0
$$

Assume, as in our original example, that in the bad state the country pays only 25 while in the good state it pays the debt in full. Let $D$ denote face value of the contry's outstanding debt, and assume that $D>25$. Then, expected receipts of the creditor are given by

$$
\text { expected repayment }=\pi(D) \times D+(1-\pi(D)) \times 25 .
$$

Is it still the case that expected receipts are increasing in the amount of debt forgiven? The answer is no, not necessarily. If an increase in debt pushes up the probability of the bad state sufficiently, then it can be the case that expected receipts actually fall as $D$ increases. Figure 9.5 shows the relationship between the magnitude of debt outstanding and expected receipts of creditors, also known as the debt Laffer curve. Expected repayment peaks at a value of debt equal to $D^{*}$. The creditor of a country with an outstanding debt equal to $D$, for example, can increase his expected receipts by forgiving debt in any amount less than $D-D^{\prime}$. In particular, the creditor will maximize expected repayment by forgiving $D-D^{*}$ units of debt. Note

[^34]Figure 9.5: The debt Laffer curve

that the optimal amount of debt relief does not result in a secondary market price of unity. In the figure, the secondary market price is given by the ratio of the debt Laffer curve to the 45 degree line. The secondary market price becomes unity only if the creditor accepts to reduce the debt to 25 , for in this case the risk of default disappears.

Let's illustrate the concept of debt overhang by means of a numerical example. Consider again the case shown in table 9.5. Suppose now creditors forgive 20 of the outstanding debt, so that the new amount of debt is 80 . Assume also that this reduction in the debt burden increases the probability of the good state from $1 / 3$ to $1 / 2$. Expected repayments are then given by $80 \times 1 / 2+25 \times 1 / 2=52.5$. Thus expected repayments increase by 2.5 even though the face value of the debt fell by 20 . Creditors would benefit from such a unilateral debt reduction. Debtors would also benefit because in case the good state occurs, they have to pay 20 less than in the absence of the debt reduction scheme. To sum up, if a country is on the "wrong" (downward sloping) side of the debt Laffer curve, then it will be the case that unilateral debt forgiveness is not necessarily against the interest of creditors. Thus, one should not be surprised to see debt forgiveness happen sometimes.

### 9.4.3 The Free Rider Problem In Debt Forgiveness

Even in the case that unilateral debt forgiveness benefits the creditors, in practice, such schemes might be difficult to implement. The reason is that
they create a "free rider" problem. Going back to the above example, suppose that only some of the creditors forgive debt but others choose not to participate. As a result of the debt forgiveness, the secondary market price of debt increases from 0.5 to $52.5 / 80=.66$ benefiting those who chose not to participate in the scheme. So, from the point of view of an individual creditor it is always best not to forgive any debt and hope that some of the other creditors do and then free ride on the debt reduction efforts of other creditors. Because of this free rider problem, if debt forgiveness occurs in practice it is usually a concerted effort, namely one where all creditors agree on forgiving some part of the debt.

### 9.4.4 Third-party debt buy-backs

A debt-reduction scheme often considered by multinational organizations is third-party debt buy backs. A third-party debt buy-back consists in purchases of developing country debt at secondary market prices by a third party, such as the World Bank, the IDB, or the IMF, with the purpose of reducing the debt burden of such countries.

Consider our original numerical example of a country that has an outstanding debt of 100 ; the country can pay 100 in the good state and only 25 in the bad state. The good state occurs with probability $1 / 3$ and the bad state with probability $2 / 3$. The secondary market price of debt is 0.50 and expected payments are 50 .

Suppose now that the World Bank announces that it will buy 75 units of (face value) debt in the secondary market. As soon as the announcement is made, the secondary market price jumps to a new value. Specifically, after the buy back the level of outstanding debt is 25 , which the debtor country can pay in any state, good or bad. Thus, expected payments are 25 , which is also the face value of the remaining outstanding debt. This implies that the secondary market price jumps up from 0.50 to 1 at the announcement of the buy-back and before it actually takes place. Who benefits from the buy-back? Creditors receive 75 from the World Bank and 25 from the debtor country. Thus, comparing the situation with and without buy-back, creditors benefit from the buy-back by 50 , because in the absence of the buy-back scheme their expected receipts were 50 whereas after the buy-back they are 100. Debtors have expected payments of 50 in the absence of the debt-reduction scheme and 25 when the debt buy-back is in place. So they benefit by 25 . Summing up, the World Bank pays 75 , of which 50 go to the creditors and 25 to the debtor countries.

We conclude that this method of introducing debt relief is expensive-
the World Bank ends up paying par value for the debt it buys back-and benefits mostly the creditors rather than the debtors whom the World Bank meant to help.

### 9.4.5 Debt swaps

Another type of debt reduction scheme is given by debt swaps. A debt swap consist in the issuance of new debt with seniority over the old debt. The new debt is then used to retire old debt. It is important that the new debt is made senior to the existing debt. This means that at the time of servicing and paying the debt, the new debt is served first.

Consider again the original numerical example described in table 9.5. The debtor country pays the face value of the debt, 100 , with probability $1 / 3$ and 25 with probability $2 / 3$. Thus, expected payments are 50 and the secondary market price is 0.5 . Suppose now that the government issues 25 units of new debt with the characteristic that the new debt has seniority over the old debt. The new debt is default free. To see this, note that in the bad state the government has 25 , which suffices to pay back the new debt. This implies that the debtor government is able to introduce the new debt at par, i.e., the price of new debt is unity. At the same time, because in the bad state all of the debtor resources are devoted to paying back the new debt, the government defaults on the totality of the outstanding old debt if the state of nature turns out to be bad. Let $D^{o}$ denote the outstanding stock of old debt after the swap. Holders of this debt receive payments in the amount $D^{o}$ in the good state and 0 in the bad state. So expected payments on the outstanding old debt equal $1 / 3 \times D^{o}+2 / 3 \times 0=1 / 3 \times D^{o}$. The secondary market price of the outstanding old debt is the ratio of the expected payments to the face value, or $\left(1 / 3 \times D^{o}\right) / D^{o}=1 / 3$. Notice that the price of old debt experiences a sharp decline from 0.5 to 0.33 . At this price, the government can use the 25 dollars raised by floating new debt to retire, or swap, $25 / 0.33=75$ units of old debt. As a result, after the swap the outstanding amount of old debt falls from 100 to 75 , or $D^{o}=25$.

Who benefits from this swap operation? Clearly the debtor country. In the absence of a swap, the debtor has expected payments of 50 . With the swap, the debtor has expected payments of 8.33 to holders of old debt and 25 to holders of new debt. These two payments add up to only 33.33. So the government gains $16.67=50-33.33$ by implementing the swap. On the other hand, creditors see their receipts fall from 50 before the swap to 33.33 after the swap ( 25 from the new debt and 8.33 from the old debt).

## Chapter 10

## Monetary Policy and Nominal Exchange Rate Determination

Thus far, we have focused on the determination of real variables, such as consumption, the trade balance, the current account, and the real exchange rate. In this chapter, we study the determination of nominal variables, such as the nominal exchange rate, the price level, inflation, and the quantity of money.

We will organize ideas around using a theoretical framework (model) that is similar to the one presented in previous chapters, with one important modification: there is a demand for money.

An important question in macroeconomics is why households voluntarily choose to hold money. In the modern world, this question arises because money takes the form of unbacked paper notes printed by the government. This kind of money, one that the government is not obliged to exchange for goods, is called fiat money. Clearly, fiat money is intrinsically valueless. One reason why people value money is that it facilitates transactions. In the absence of money, all purchases of goods must take the form of barter. Barter exchanges can be very difficult to arrange because they require double coincident of wants. For example, a carpenter who wants to eat an ice cream must find an ice cream maker that is in need of a carpenter. Money eliminates the need for double coincidence of wants. In this chapter we assume that agents voluntarily hold money because it facilitates transactions.

### 10.1 The quantity theory of money

What determines the level of the nominal exchange rate? Why has the Euro been depreciating vis-a-vis the US dollar since its inception in 1999? The quantity theory of money asserts that a key determinant of the exchange rate is the quantity of money printed by central banks.

According to the quantity theory of money, people hold a more or less stable fraction of their income in the form of money. Formally, letting $Y$ denote real income, $M^{d}$ money holdings, and $P$ the price level (i.e., the price of a representative basket of goods), then

$$
M^{d}=\kappa P \cdot Y
$$

This means that the real value of money, $M^{d} / P$, is determined by the level of real activity of the economy. Let $m^{d} \equiv M^{d} / P$ denote the demand for real money balances. The quantity theory of money then maintains that $m^{d}$ is determined by nonmonetary or real factors such as aggregate output, the degree of technological advancement, etc.. Let $M^{s}$ denote the nominal money supply, that is, $M^{s}$ represents the quantity of bills and coins in circulation plus checking deposits. Equilibrium in the money market requires that money demand be equal to money supply, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{M^{s}}{P}=m^{d} \tag{10.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

A similar equilibrium condition has to hold in the foreign country. Let $M^{* s}$ denote the foreign nominal money supply, $P^{*}$ the foreign price level, and $m^{* d}$ the demand for real balances in the foreign country. Then,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{M^{* s}}{P^{*}}=m^{* d} \tag{10.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $E$ denote the nominal exchange rate, defined as the domestic-currency price of the foreign currency. So, for example, if $E$ refers to the dollar/euro exchange rate, then stands for the number of US dollars necessary to purchase one euro. Let $e$ denote the real exchange rate. As explained in previous chapters, $e$ represents the relative price of a foreign basket of goods in terms of domestic baskets of goods. Formally,

$$
e=\frac{E P^{*}}{P}
$$

Using this expression along with (10.1) and (10.2), we can express the nominal exchange rate, $E$, as

$$
\begin{equation*}
E=\frac{M}{M^{*}}\left(\frac{e m^{*}}{m}\right) \tag{10.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

According to the quantity theory of money, not only $m$ and $m^{*}$ but also $e$ are determined by non-monetary factors. The quantity of money, in turn, depends on the exchange rate regime maintained by the respective central banks. There are two polar exchange rate arrangements: flexible and fixed exchange rate regimes.

### 10.1.1 Floating (or Flexible) Exchange Rate Regime

Under a floating exchange rate regime, the market determines the nominal exchange rate $E$. In this case the level of the money supplies in the domestic and foreign countries, $M^{s}$ and $M^{* s}$, are determined by the respective central banks and are, therefore, exogenous variables. Exogenous variables are those that are determined outside of the model. By contrast, the nominal exchange rate is an endogenous variable in the sense that its equilibrium value is determined within the model.

Suppose, for example, that the domestic central bank decides to increase the money supply $M^{s}$. It is clear from equation (10.3) that, all other things constant, the monetary expansion in the home country causes the nominal exchange rate $E$ to depreciate by the same proportion as the increase in the money supply. (i.e., $E$ increases). The intuition behind this effect is simple. An increase in the quantity of money of the domestic country increases the relative scarcity of the foreign currency, thus inducing an increase in the relative price of the foreign currency in terms of the domestic currency, $E$. In addition, equation (10.1) implies that when $M$ increases the domestic price level, $P$, increases in the same proportion as $M$. An increase in the domestic money supply generates inflation in the domestic country. The reason for this increase in prices is that when the central bank injects additional money balances into the economy, households find themselves with more money than they wish to hold. As a result households try to get rid of the excess money balances by purchasing goods. This increase in the demand for goods drives prices up.

Suppose now that the real exchange rate depreciates, (that is $e$ goes up). This means that a foreign basket of goods becomes more expensive relative to a domestic basket of goods. A depreciation of the real exchange rate can be due to a variety of reason, such as a terms-of-trade shock or the removal of import barriers. If the central bank keeps the money supply unchanged, then by equation (10.3) a real exchange rate depreciation causes a depreciation (an increase) of the nominal exchange rate. Note that $e$ and $E$ increase by the same proportion. The price level $P$ is unaffected because neither $M$ nor $m$ have changed (see equation (10.1)).

### 10.1.2 Fixed Exchange Rate Regime

Under a fixed exchange rate regime, the central bank determines $E$ by intervening in the money market. So given $E, M^{* s}$, and $e m^{* s} / m^{s}$, equation (10.3) determines what $M^{s}$ ought to be in equilibrium. Thus, under a fixed exchange rate regime, $M^{s}$ is an endogenous variable, whereas $E$ is exogenously determined by the central bank.

Suppose that the real exchange rate, $e$, experiences a depreciation. In this case, the central bank must reduce the money supply (that is, $M^{s}$ must fall) to compensate for the real exchange rate depreciation. Indeed, the money supply must fall by the same proportion as the real exchange rate. In addition, the domestic price level, $P$, must also fall by the same proportion as $e$ in order for real balances to stay constant (see equation (10.1)). This implies that we have a deflation, contrary to what happens under a floating exchange rate policy.

### 10.2 Fiscal deficits and the exchange rate

The quantity theory of money provides a simple and insightful analysis of the relationship between money, prices, the nominal exchange rate, and real variables. However, it leaves a number of questions unanswered. For example, what is the effect of fiscal policy on inflation? What role do expectations about future changes in monetary and fiscal policy play for the determination of prices, exchange rates and real balances? To address these questions, it is necessary to use a richer model; one that incorporates a more realistic money demand specification and one that explicitly considers the relationship between monetary and fiscal policy.

In this section, embed a money demand function into a model with a government sector, similar to the one used in chapter 5 to analyze the effects of fiscal deficits on the current account. Specifically, we consider a smallopen endowment economy with free capital mobility, a single traded good per period, and a government that levies lump-sum taxes to finance government purchases. For simplicity, we assume that there is no physical capital and hence no investment. Domestic output is given as an endowment. Besides the introduction of money demand, a further difference with the economy studied in chapter 5 is that now the economy is assumed to exist not just for 2 periods but for an infinite number of periods. Such an economy is called an infinite horizon economy.

We discuss in detail each of the four building blocks that compose our monetary economy: (1) The money demand; (2) Purchasing power parity;
(3) Interest rate parity; and (4) The government budget constraint.

### 10.2.1 Money demand

In the quantity theory, money demand is assumed to depend only on the level of real activity. In reality, however, the demand for money also depends on the nominal interest rate. In particular money demand is decreasing in the nominal interest rate. The reason is that money is a non-interestbearing asset. As a result, the opportunity cost of holding money is the nominal interest rate on alternative interest-bearing liquid assets such as time deposits, government bonds, and money market mutual funds. Thus, the higher the nominal interest rate the lower is the demand for real money balances. Formally, we assume a money demand function of the form:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{M_{t}}{P_{t}}=L\left(\bar{C}, i_{t}\right) \tag{10.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\bar{C}$ denotes consumption and $i_{t}$ denotes the domestic nominal interest rate in period $t$. The function $L$ is increasing in consumption and decreasing in the nominal interest rate. We assume that consumption is constant over time. Therefore $C$ does not have a time subscript. We indicate that consumption is constant by placing a bar over $C$. The money demand function $L(\cdot, \cdot)$ is also known as the liquidity preference function. Those readers interested in learning how a money demand like equation (10.4) can be derived from the optimization problem of the household should consult the appendix to this chapter.

### 10.2.2 Purchasing power parity (PPP)

Because in the economy under consideration there is a single traded good and no barriers to international trade, purchasing power parity must hold. Let $P_{t}$ be the domestic currency price of the good in period $t, P_{t}^{*}$ the foreign currency price of the good in period $t$, and $E_{t}$ the nominal exchange rate in period $t$, defined as the price of one unit of foreign currency in terms of domestic currency. Then PPP implies that in any period $t$

$$
P_{t}=E_{t} P_{t}^{*}
$$

For simplicity, assume that the foreign currency price of the good is constant and equal to $1\left(P_{t}^{*}=1\right.$ for all $\left.t\right)$. In this case, it follows from PPP that the domestic price level is equal to the nominal exchange rate,

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{t}=E_{t} . \tag{10.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using this relationship, we can write the liquidity preference function (10.4) as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{M_{t}}{E_{t}}=L\left(\bar{C}, i_{t}\right) \tag{10.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

### 10.2.3 The interest parity condition

In this economy, there is no uncertainty and free capital mobility. Thus, the gross domestic nominal interest rate must be equal to the gross world nominal interest rate times the expected gross rate of devaluation of the domestic currency. This relation is called the uncovered interest parity condition. Formally, let $E_{t+1}^{e}$ denote the nominal exchange rate that agents expect at time $t$ to prevail at time $t+1$, and let $i_{t}$ denote the domestic nominal interest rate, that is, the rate of return on an asset denominated in domestic currency and held from period $t$ to period $t+1$. Then the uncovered interest parity condition is:

$$
\begin{equation*}
1+i_{t}=\left(1+r^{*}\right) \frac{E_{t+1}^{e}}{E_{t}} \tag{10.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

In the absence of uncertainty, the nominal exchange rate that will prevail at time $t+1$ is known at time $t$, so that $E_{t+1}^{e}=E_{t+1}$. Then, the uncovered interest parity condition becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
1+i_{t}=\left(1+r^{*}\right) \frac{E_{t+1}}{E_{t}} \tag{10.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

This condition has a very intuitive interpretation. The left hand side is the gross rate of return of investing 1 unit of domestic currency in a domestic currency denominated bond. Because there is free capital mobility, this investment must yield the same return as investing 1 unit of domestic currency in foreign bonds. One unit of domestic currency buys $1 / E_{t}$ units of the foreign bond. In turn, $1 / E_{t}$ units of the foreign bond pay $\left(1+r^{*}\right) / E_{t}$ units of foreign currency in period $t+1$, which can then be exchanged for $\left(1+r^{*}\right) E_{t+1} / E_{t}$ units of domestic currency. ${ }^{1}$

[^35]
### 10.2.4 The government budget constraint

The government has three sources of income: real tax revenues, $T_{t}$, money creation, $M_{t}-M_{t-1}$, and interest earnings from holdings of international bonds, $E_{t} r^{*} B_{t-1}^{g}$, where $B_{t-1}^{g}$ denotes the government's holdings of foreign currency denominated bonds carried over from period $t-1$ into period $t$ and $r^{*}$ is the international interest rate. Government bonds, $B_{t}^{g}$, are denominated in foreign currency and pay the world interest rate $r^{*}$. The government allocates its income to finance government purchases, $P_{t} G_{t}$, where $G_{t}$ denotes real government consumption of goods in period $t$, and to changes in its holdings of foreign bonds, $E_{t}\left(B_{t}^{g}-B_{t-1}^{g}\right)$. Thus, in period $t$, the government budget constraint is

$$
E_{t}\left(B_{t}^{g}-B_{t-1}^{g}\right)+P_{t} G_{t}=P_{t} T_{t}+\left(M_{t}-M_{t-1}\right)+E_{t} r^{*} B_{t-1}^{g}
$$

The left hand side of this expression represents the government's uses of revenue and the right hand side the sources. Note that $B_{t}^{g}$ is not restricted to be positive. If $B_{t}^{g}$ is positive, then the government is a creditor, whereas if it is negative, then the government is a debtor. ${ }^{2}$ We can express the government budget constraint in real terms by dividing the left and right hand sides of the above equation by the price level $P_{t}$. After rearranging terms, the result can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{t}^{g}-B_{t-1}^{g}=\frac{M_{t}-M_{t-1}}{P_{t}}-\left[G_{t}-T_{t}-r^{*} B_{t-1}^{g}\right] \tag{10.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

The first term on the right hand side measures the government's real revenue from money creation and is called seignorage revenue,

$$
\text { seignorage revenue }=\frac{M_{t}-M_{t-1}}{P_{t}} .
$$

The second term on the right hand side of (10.9) is the difference between government expenditures and income from the collection of taxes and from interest payments on interest-bearing assets. This term is called real secondary deficit and we will denote it by $D E F_{t}$,

$$
D E F_{t}=\left(G_{t}-T_{t}\right)-r^{*} B_{t-1}^{g}
$$

[^36]The difference between government expenditures and tax revenues $\left(G_{t}-T_{t}\right)$ is called primary deficit. Thus, the secondary government deficit equals the difference between the primary deficit and interest income from government holdings of interest bearing assets.

Using the definition of secondary deficit and the fact that by PPP $P_{t}=$ $E_{t}$, the government budget constraint can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{t}^{g}-B_{t-1}^{g}=\frac{M_{t}-M_{t-1}}{E_{t}}-D E F_{t} \tag{10.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

This equation makes it transparent that a fiscal deficit $\left(D E F_{t}>0\right)$ must be associated with money creation ( $M_{t}-M_{t-1}>0$ ) or with a decline in the government's holdings of assets ( $B_{t}^{g}-B_{t-1}^{g}<0$ ), or both. To complete the description of the economy, we must specify the exchange rate regime, to which we turn next.

### 10.2.5 A fixed exchange rate regime

Under a fixed exchange rate regime, the government intervenes in the foreign exchange market in order to keep the exchange rate at a fixed level. Let that fixed level be denoted by $E$. Then $E_{t}=E$ for all $t$. When the government pegs the exchange rate, the money supply becomes an endogenous variable because the central bank must stand ready to exchange domestic for foreign currency at the fixed rate $E$. Given the nominal exchange rate $E$, the PPP condition, given by equation (10.5), implies that the price level, $P_{t}$, is also constant and equal to $E$ for all $t$. Because the nominal exchange rate is constant, the expected rate of devaluation is zero. This implies, by the interest parity condition (10.8), that the domestic nominal interest rate, $i_{t}$, is constant and equal to the world interest rate $r^{*}$. It then follows from the liquidity preference equation (10.6) that the demand for nominal balances is constant and equal to $E L\left(\bar{C}, r^{*}\right)$. Since in equilibrium money demand must equal money supply, we have that the money supply is also constant over time: $M_{t}=M_{t-1}=E L\left(\bar{C}, r^{*}\right)$. Using the fact that the money supply is constant, the government budget constraint (10.10) becomes

$$
\begin{equation*}
B_{t}^{g}-B_{t-1}^{g}=-D E F_{t} \tag{10.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

In words, when the government pegs the exchange rate, it loses one source of revenue, namely, seignorage. Therefore, fiscal deficits must be entirely financed through the sale of interest bearing assets.

## Fiscal deficits and the sustainability of currency pegs

For a fixed exchange rate regime to be sustainable over time, it is necessary that the government displays fiscal discipline. To see this, suppose that the government runs a perpetual secondary deficit, say $D E F_{t}=D E F>0$ for all $t$. Equation (10.11) then implies that government assets are falling over time ( $B_{t}^{g}-B_{t-1}^{g}=-D E F<0$ ). At some point $B_{t}^{g}$ will become negative, which implies that the government is a debtor. Suppose that there is an upper limit on the size of the public debt. Clearly, when the public debt hits that limit, the government is forced to either eliminate the fiscal deficit (i.e., set $D E F=0$ ) or abandon the exchange rate peg. The latter alternative is called a balance of payments crisis. We will analyze balance of payments crises in more detail in section 10.3.

## The fiscal consequences of a devaluation

Consider now the effects of a once-and-for-all devaluation of the domestic currency. By PPP, a devaluation produces an increase in the domestic price level of the same proportion as the increase in the nominal exchange rate. Given the households' holdings of nominal money balances the increase in the price level implies that real balances will decline. Thus, a devaluation acts as a tax on real balances. In order to rebuild their real balances, households will sell part of their foreign bonds to the central bank in return for domestic currency. The net effect of a devaluation is that the private sector is made poorer because it ends up with the same level of real balances but with less foreign assets. On the other hand, the government benefits because it increases its holdings of interest bearing assets.

To see more formally why a once-and-for-all devaluation of the domestic currency generates revenue for the government, assume that in period 1 the government unexpectedly announces an increase in the nominal exchange rate from $E$ to $E^{\prime}>E$, that is, $E_{t}=E^{\prime}$ for all $t \geq 1$. By the PPP condition, equation (10.5), the domestic price level, $P_{t}$, jumps up in period 1 from $E$ to $E^{\prime}$ and remains at that level thereafter. Because the nominal exchange rate is constant from period 1 on, the future rate of devaluation is zero, which implies, by the interest rate parity condition (10.8), that the domestic nominal interest rate is equal to the world interest rate $\left(i_{t}=r^{*}\right.$ for all $t \geq 1$ ). Because the nominal interest rete was equal to $r^{*}$ before period 1 , it follows that an unexpected, once-and-for-all devaluation has no effect on the domestic nominal interest rate. The reason why the nominal interest rate remains unchanged is that it depends on the expected future rather
than the actual rate of devaluation. In period 0 , households did not expect the government to devalue the domestic currency in period 1 . Therefore, the expected devaluation rate was zero and the nominal interest rate was equal to $r^{*}$. In period 1 , households expect no further devaluations of the domestic currency in the future, thus the nominal interest rate is also equal to $r^{*}$ from period 1 on.

Using the fact that the nominal interest rate is unchanged, the liquidity preference equation (10.6) then implies that in period 1 the demand for nominal money balances increases from $E L\left(\bar{C}, r^{*}\right)$ to $E^{\prime} L\left(\bar{C}, r^{*}\right)$. This means that the demand for nominal balances must increase by the same proportion as the nominal exchange rate. Consider now the government budget constraint in period 1.

$$
B_{1}^{g}-B_{0}^{g}=\frac{M_{1}-M_{0}}{E^{\prime}}-D E F_{1} .
$$

The numerator of the first term on the right-hand side, $M_{1}-M_{0}$, equals $E^{\prime} L\left(\bar{C}, r^{*}\right)-E L\left(\bar{C}, r^{*}\right)$, which is positive. Thus, in period 1 seignorage revenue is positive. In the absence of a devaluation, seignorage revenue would be nil because in that case $M_{1}-M_{0}=E L\left(\bar{C}, r^{*}\right)-E L\left(\bar{C}, r^{*}\right)=$ 0 . Therefore, a devaluation increases government revenue in the period in which the devaluation takes place. In the periods after the devaluation, $t=2,3,4, \ldots$, the nominal money demand, $M_{t}$, is constant and equal to $M_{1}=E^{\prime} L\left(\bar{C}, r^{*}\right)$, so that $M_{t}-M_{t-1}=0$ for all $t \geq 2$ and seignorage revenue is nil.

### 10.2.6 Equilibrium under a floating exchange rate regime

Under a floating exchange rate regime, the nominal exchange rate is market determined, that is, the nominal exchange rate is an endogenous variable. We will assume that the central bank determines how much money is in circulation each period. Therefore, this monetary/exchange rate regime is exactly the opposite to the one studied in subsection 10.2 .5 , where the central bank fixed the nominal exchange rate and let the quantity of money be market (or endogenously) determined.

Consider a specific monetary policy in which the central bank expands the money supply at a constant, positive rate $\mu$ each period, so that

$$
\begin{equation*}
M_{t}=(1+\mu) M_{t-1} \tag{10.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

Our goal is to find out how the endogenous variables of the model, such as the nominal exchange rate, the price level, real balances, the domestic
nominal interest rate, and so forth behave under the monetary/exchange rate regime specified by equation (10.12). To do this, we will conjecture (or guess) that in equilibrium the nominal exchange rate depreciates at the rate $\mu$. We will then verify that our guess is correct. Thus, we are guessing that

$$
\frac{E_{t+1}}{E_{t}}=1+\mu
$$

Because PPP holds and the foreign price level is one (i.e., $P_{t}=E_{t}$ ), the domestic price level must also grow at the rate of monetary expansion $\mu$,

$$
\frac{P_{t+1}}{P_{t}}=1+\mu
$$

This expression says that, given our guess, the rate of inflation must equal the rate of growth of the money supply. Panels (a) and (b) of figure 10.1 display annual averages of the rate of depreciation of the Argentine currency

Figure 10.1: Devaluation, inflation, and money growth. Argentina 19012005

vis-à-vis the U.S. dollar, the Argentine money growth rate, and the Argentine inflation rate for the period 1901-2005. (We omitted the years 1984, 1985, 1989, 1990 where annual money growth rates exceeded 400 perent.) The data is roughly consistent with the model in showing that there exists a close positive relationship between these three variables. ${ }^{3}$

[^37]To determine the domestic nominal interest rate $i_{t}$, use the interest parity condition (10.8)

$$
1+i_{t}=\left(1+r^{*}\right) \frac{E_{t+1}}{E_{t}}=\left(1+r^{*}\right)(1+\mu)
$$

which implies that the nominal interest rate is constant and increasing in $\mu$. When $\mu$ is positive, the domestic nominal interest rate exceeds the real interest rate $r^{*}$ because the domestic currency is depreciating over time. We summarize the positive relationship between $i_{t}$ and $\mu$ by writing

$$
i_{t}=i(\mu)
$$

The notation $i(\mu)$ simply indicates that $i_{t}$ is a function of $\mu$. The function $i(\mu)$ is increasing in $\mu$. Substituting this expression into the liquidity preference function (10.6) yields

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{M_{t}}{E_{t}}=L(\bar{C}, i(\mu)) \tag{10.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that $\bar{C}$ is a constant and that because the money growth rate $\mu$ is constant, the nominal interest rate $i(\mu)$ is also constant. Therefore, the right hand side of (10.13) is constant. For the money market to be in equilibrium, the left-hand side of (10.13) must also be constant. This will be the case only if the exchange rate depreciates - grows - at the same rate as the money supply. This is indeed true under our initial conjecture that $E_{t+1} / E_{t}=1+\mu$. Equation (10.13) says that in equilibrium real money balances must be constant and that the higher the money growth rate $\mu$ the lower the equilibrium level of real balances.

Let's now return to the government budget constraint (10.10), which we reproduce below for convenience

$$
B_{t}^{g}-B_{t-1}^{g}=\frac{M_{t}-M_{t-1}}{E_{t}}-D E F_{t}
$$

Let's analyze the first term on the right-hand side of this expression, seignorage revenue. Using the fact that $M_{t}=E_{t} L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))$ (equation (10.13)), we can write

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{M_{t}-M_{t-1}}{E_{t}} & =\frac{E_{t} L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))-E_{t-1} L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))}{E_{t}} \\
& =L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))\left(\frac{E_{t}-E_{t-1}}{E_{t}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Using the fact that the nominal exchange rate depreciates at the rate $\mu$, that is, $E_{t}=(1+\mu) E_{t-1}$, to eliminate $E_{t}$ and $E_{t-1}$ from the above expression, we can write seignorage revenue as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{M_{t}-M_{t-1}}{E_{t}}=L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))\left(\frac{\mu}{1+\mu}\right) \tag{10.14}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, seignorage revenue is equal to the product of real balances, $L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))$, and the factor $\mu /(1+\mu)$.

The right hand side of equation (10.14) can also be interpreted as the inflation tax. The idea is that inflation acts as a tax on the public's holdings of real money balances. To see this, let's compute the change in the real value of money holdings from period $t-1$ to period $t$. In period $t-1$ nominal money holdings are $M_{t-1}$ which have a real value of $M_{t-1} / P_{t-1}$. In period $t$ the real value of $M_{t-1}$ is $M_{t-1} / P_{t}$. Therefore we have that the inflation tax equals $M_{t-1} / P_{t-1}-M_{t-1} / P_{t}$, or, equivalently,

$$
\text { inflation tax }=\frac{M_{t-1}}{P_{t-1}} \frac{P_{t}-P_{t-1}}{P_{t}}
$$

where $M_{t-1} / P_{t-1}$ is the tax base and $\left(P_{t}-P_{t-1}\right) / P_{t}$ is the tax rate. Using the facts that in our model real balances are equal to $L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))$ and that $P_{t} / P_{t-1}=1+\mu$, the inflation tax can be written as

$$
\text { inflation } \operatorname{tax}=L(\bar{C}, i(\mu)) \frac{\mu}{1+\mu},
$$

which equals seignorage revenue. In general seignorage revenue and the inflation tax are not equal to each other. They are equal in the special case that real balances are constant over time, like in our model when the money supply expands at a constant rate.

Because the tax base, real balances, is decreasing in $\mu$ and the tax rate, $\mu /(1+\mu)$, is increasing in $\mu$, it is not clear whether seignorage increases or decreases with the rate of expansion of the money supply. Whether seignorage revenue is increasing or decreasing in $\mu$ depends on the form of the liquidity preference function $L(\cdot, \cdot)$ as well as on the level of $\mu$ itself. Typically, for low values of $\mu$ seignorage revenue is increasing in $\mu$. However, as $\mu$ gets large the contraction in the tax base (the money demand) dominates the increase in the tax rate and therefore seignorage revenue falls as $\mu$ increases. Thus, there exists a maximum level of revenue a government can collect from printing money. The resulting relationship between the growth rate of the money supply and seignorage revenue has the shape of an inverted- U and is called the inflation tax Laffer curve (see figure 10.2).

Figure 10.2: The Laffer curve of inflation


## Inflationary finance

We now use the theoretical framework developed thus far to analyze the link between fiscal deficits, prices, and the exchange rate. Consider a situation in which the government is running constant fiscal deficits $D E F_{t}=D E F>0$ for all $t$. Furthermore, assume that the government has reached its borrowing limit and thus cannot finance the fiscal deficits by issuing additional debt, so that $B_{t}^{g}-B_{t-1}^{g}$ must be equal to zero. Under these circumstances, the government budget constraint (10.10) becomes

$$
D E F=\frac{M_{t}-M_{t-1}}{E_{t}}
$$

It is clear from this expression, that a country that has exhausted its ability to issue public debt must resort to printing money in order to finance the fiscal deficit. This way of financing the public sector is called monetization of the fiscal deficit. Combining the above expression with (10.14) we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
D E F=L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))\left(\frac{\mu}{1+\mu}\right) \tag{10.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

Figure 10.3 illustrates the relationship between fiscal deficits and the rate of monetary expansion implied by this equation. The Laffer curve of inflation corresponds to the right hand side of (10.15). The horizontal line plots the left hand side (10.15), or $D E F$. There are two rates of monetary expansion, $\mu_{1}$ and $\mu_{2}$, that generate enough seignorage revenue to finance the fiscal

Figure 10.3: Inflationary finance and the Laffer curve of inflation

deficit $D E F$. Thus, there exist two equilibrium levels of monetary expansion associated with a fiscal deficit equal to $D E F$. In the $\mu_{2}$ equilibrium, point $B$ in the figure, the rates of inflation and of exchange rate depreciation are relatively high and equal to $\mu_{2}$, whereas in the $\mu_{1}$ equilibrium, point A in the figure, the rates of inflation and depreciation are lower and equal to $\mu_{1}$. Empirical studies show that in reality, economies tend to be located on the upward sloping branch of the Laffer curve. Thus, the more realistic scenario is described by point A.

Consider now the effect of an increase in the fiscal deficit from $D E F$ to $D E F^{\prime}>D E F$. To finance the larger fiscal deficit, the government is forced to increase the money supply at a faster rater. At the new equilibrium, point $A^{\prime}$, the rate of monetary expansion, $\mu_{1}{ }^{\prime}$ is greater than at the old equilibrium. As a result, the inflation rate, the rate of depreciation of the domestic currency, and the nominal interest rate are all higher.

The following numerical example provides additional insight on the connection between money creation and fiscal deficits. Suppose that the liquidity preference function is given by:

$$
\frac{M_{t}}{E_{t}}=\gamma \bar{C}\left(\frac{1+i_{t}}{i_{t}}\right)
$$

Suppose that the government runs a fiscal deficit of $10 \%$ of GDP (DEF/Q $=$ $0.1)$, that the share of consumption in GDP is $65 \%(\bar{C} / Q=0.65)$, that the world real interest rate is $5 \%$ per year $\left(r^{*}=0.05\right)$, and that $\gamma$ is equal to
0.2 . The question is what is the rate of monetary expansion necessary to monetize the fiscal deficit. Combining equations (10.2.6) and (10.15) and using the fact $1+i_{t}=\left(1+r^{*}\right)(1+\mu)$ we have,

$$
D E F=\gamma \bar{C} \frac{\left(1+r^{*}\right)(1+\mu)}{\left(1+r^{*}\right)(1+\mu)-1} \frac{\mu}{1+\mu}
$$

Divide the left and right hand sides of this expression by $Q$ and solve for $\mu$ to obtain

$$
\mu=\frac{r^{*}(D E F / Q)}{\left(1+r^{*}\right)(\gamma(\bar{C} / Q)-(D E F / Q))}=\frac{0.05 \times 0.1}{1.05 \times(0.2 \times 0.65-0.1)}=0.16
$$

The government must increase the money supply at a rate of $16 \%$ per year. This implies that both the rates of inflation and depreciation of the domestic currency in this economy will be $16 \%$ per year. The nominal interest rate is $21 \%$ per year. At a deficit of $10 \%$ of GDP, the Laffer curve is rather flat. For example, if the government cuts the fiscal deficit by $1 \%$ of GDP, the equilibrium money growth rate falls to $11 \%$.

In some instances, inflationary finance can degenerate into hyperinflation. Perhaps the best-known episode is the German hyperinflation of 1923. Between August 1922 and November 1923, Germany experienced an average monthly inflation rate of 322 percent. ${ }^{4}$ More recently, in the late 1980s a number of hyperinflationary episodes took place in Latin America and Eastern Europe. One of the more severe cases was Argentina, where the inflation rate averaged 66 percent per month between May 1989 and March 1990.

A hyperinflationary situation arises when the fiscal deficit reaches a level that can no longer be financed by seignorage revenue alone. In terms of figure 10.3 , this would be the case if the fiscal deficit would be larger than $D E F^{*}$, the level of deficit associated with the peak of the Laffer curve. What happens in practice is that the government is initially unaware of the fact that no rate of monetary expansion will suffice to finance the deficit. In its attempt to close the fiscal gap, the government accelerates the rate of money creation. But this measure is counterproductive because the government has entered the downward sloping side of the Laffer curve. The decline in seignorage revenue leads the government to increase the money supply at an even faster rate. These dynamics turn into a vicious cycle that ends in an accelerating inflationary spiral. The most fundamental step in ending

[^38]hyperinflation is to eliminate the underlying budgetary imbalances that are at the root of the problem. When this type of structural fiscal reforms is undertaken and is understood by the public, hyperinflation typically stops abruptly.

## Money growth and inflation in a growing economy

Thus far, we have considered the case in which consumption is constant over time. ${ }^{5}$ We now wish to consider the case that consumption is growing over time. Specifically, we will assume that consumption grows at a constant rate $\gamma>0$, that is,

$$
C_{t+1}=(1+\gamma) C_{t} .
$$

We also assume that the liquidity preference function is of the form

$$
L\left(C_{t}, i_{t}\right)=C_{t} l\left(i_{t}\right)
$$

where $l(\cdot)$ is a decreasing function. ${ }^{6}$ Consider again the case that the government expands the money supply at a constant rate $\mu>0$. As before, we find the equilibrium by first guessing the value of the depreciation rate and then verifying that this guess indeed can be supported as an equilibrium outcome. Specifically, we conjecture that the domestic currency depreciates at the rate $(1+\mu) /(1+\gamma)-1$, that is,

$$
\frac{E_{t+1}}{E_{t}}=\frac{1+\mu}{1+\gamma}
$$

Our conjecture says that given the rate of monetary expansion, the higher the rate of economic growth, the lower the rate of depreciation of the domestic currency. In particular, if the government wishes to keep the domestic currency from depreciating, it can do so by setting the rate of monetary expansion at a level no greater than the rate of growth of consumption $(\mu \leq \gamma)$. By interest rate parity,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(1+i_{t}\right) & =\left(1+r^{*}\right) \frac{E_{t+1}}{E_{t}} \\
& =\left(1+r^{*}\right) \frac{(1+\mu)}{(1+\gamma)}
\end{aligned}
$$

[^39]This expression says that the nominal interest rate is constant over time. We can summarize this relationship by writing

$$
i_{t}=i(\mu, \gamma), \quad \text { for all } t
$$

where the function $i(\mu, \gamma)$ is increasing in $\mu$ and decreasing in $\gamma$. Equilibrium in the money market requires that the real money supply be equal to the demand for real balances, that is,

$$
\frac{M_{t}}{E_{t}}=C_{t} l(i(\mu, \gamma))
$$

The right-hand side of this expression is proportional to consumption, and therefore grows at the gross rate $1+\gamma$. The numerator of the left hand side grows at the gross rate $1+\mu$. Therefore, in equilibrium the denominator of the left hand side must expand at the gross rate $(1+\mu) /(1+\gamma)$, which is precisely our conjecture.

Finally, by PPP and given our assumption that $P_{t}^{*}=1$, we have that the domestic price level, $P_{t}$, must be equal to the nominal exchange rate, $E_{t}$. It follows that the domestic rate of inflation must be equal to the rate of depreciation of the nominal exchange rate, that is,

$$
\frac{P_{t}-P_{t-1}}{P_{t-1}}=\frac{E_{t}-E_{t-1}}{E_{t-1}}=\frac{1+\mu}{1+\gamma}-1
$$

This expression shows that to the extend that consumption growth is positive the domestic inflation rate is lower than the rate of monetary expansion. The intuition for this result is straightforward. A given increase in the money supply that is not accompanied by an increase in the demand for real balances will translate into a proportional increase in prices. This is because in trying to get rid of their excess nominal money holdings households attempt to buy more goods. But since the supply of goods is unchanged the increased demand for goods will be met by an increase in prices. This is a typical case of "more money chasing the same amount of goods." When the economy is growing, the demand for real balances is also growing. That means that part of the increase in the money supply will not end up chasing goods but rather will end up in the pockets of consumers.

### 10.3 Balance-of-payments crises

A balance of payments, or BOP, crisis is a situation in which the government is unable or unwilling to meet its financial obligations. These difficulties may
manifest themselves in a variety of ways, such as the failure to honor the domestic and/or foreign public debt or the suspension of currency convertibility.

What causes BOP crises? Sometimes a BOP crisis arises as the inevitable consequence of unsustainable combinations of monetary and fiscal policies. A classic example of such a policy mix is a situation in which a government pegs the nominal exchange rate and at the same time runs a fiscal deficit. As we discussed in subsection 10.2.5, under a fixed exchange rate regime, the government must finance any fiscal deficit by running down its stock of interest bearing assets (see equation (10.11)). Clearly, to the extent that there is a limit to the amount of debt a government is able to issue, this situation cannot continue indefinitely. When the public debt hits its upper limit, the government is forced to change policy. One possibility is that the government stops servicing the debt (i.e., stops paying interest on its outstanding financial obligations), thereby reducing the size of the secondary deficit. This alternative was adopted by Mexico in August of 1982, when it announced that it would be unable to honor its debt commitments according to schedule, marking the beginning of what today is known as the Developing Country Debt Crisis. A second possibility is that the government adopt a fiscal adjustment program by cutting government spending and raising regular taxes and in that way reduce the primary deficit. Finally, the government can abandon the exchange rate peg and resort to monetizing the fiscal deficit. This has been the fate of the vast majority of currency pegs adopted in developing countries. The economic history of Latin America of the past two decades is plagued with such episodes. For example, the currency pegs implemented in Argentina, Chile, and Uruguay in the late 1970s, also known as tablitas, ended with large devaluations in the early 1980s; similar outcomes were observed in the Argentine Austral stabilization plan of 1985, the Brazilian Cruzado plan of 1986, the Mexican plan of 1987, and, more recently the Brazilian Real plan of 1994.

An empirical regularity associated with the collapse of fixed exchange rate regimes is that in the days immediately before the peg is abandoned, the central bank looses vast amounts of reserves in a short period of time. The loss of reserves is the consequence of a run by the public against the domestic currency in anticipation of the impending devaluation. The stampede of people trying to massively get rid of domestic currency in exchange for foreign currency is driven by the desire to avoid the loss of real value of domestic currency denominated assets that will take place when the currency is devalued.

The first formal model of the dynamics of a fixed exchange rate collapse
is due to Paul R. Krugman of Princeton University. ${ }^{7}$ In this section, we will analyze these dynamics using the tools developed in sections 10.2.5 and 10.2.6. These tools will helpful in a natural way because, from an analytical point of view, the collapse of a currency peg is indeed a transition from a fixed to a floating exchange rate regime.

Consider a country that is running a constant fiscal deficit $D E F>0$ each period. Suppose that in period 1 the country embarks in a currency peg. Specifically, assume that the government fixes the nominal exchange rate at $E$ units of domestic currency per unit of foreign currency. Suppose that in period 1 , when the currency peg is announced, the government has a positive stock of foreign assets carried over from period $0, B_{0}^{g}>0$. Further, assume that the government does not have access to credit. That is, the government asset holdings are constrained to being nonnegative, or $B_{t}^{g} \geq 0$ for all $t$. It is clear from our discussion of the sustainability of currency pegs in subsection 10.2.5 that, as long as the currency peg is in effect, the fiscal deficit produces a continuous drain of assets, which at some point will be completely depleted. Put differently, if the fiscal deficit is not eliminated, at some point the government will be forced to abandon the currency peg and start printing money in order to finance the deficit. Let $T$ denote the period in which, as a result of having run out of reserves, the government abandons the peg and begins to monetize the fiscal deficit.

The dynamics of the currency crisis are characterized by three distinct phases. (1) The pre-collapse phase: during this phase, which lasts from $t=1$ to $t=T-2$, the currency peg is in effect. (2) The BOP crisis: It takes place in period $t=T-1$, and is the period in which the central bank faces a run against the domestic currency, resulting in massive losses of foreign reserves. (3) The post-collapse phase: It encompasses the period from $t=T$ onwards In this phase, the nominal exchange rate floats freely and the central bank expands the money supply at a rate consistent with the monetization of the fiscal deficit.

## (1) The pre-crisis phase: from $t=1$ to $t=T-2$

From period 1 to period $T-2$, the exchange rate is pegged, so the variables of interest behave as described in section 10.2.5. In particular, the nominal exchange rate is constant and equal to $E$, that is, $E_{t}=E$ for $t=1,2, \ldots, T$ 2. By PPP, and given our assumption that $P_{t}^{*}=1$, the domestic price level is also constant over time and equal to $E\left(P_{t}=E\right.$ for $\left.t=1,2, \ldots, T-2\right)$.

[^40]Because the exchange rate is fixed, the devaluation rate $\left(E_{t}-E_{t-1}\right) / E_{t-1}$, is equal to 0 . The nominal interest, $i_{t}$, which by the uncovered interest parity condition satisfies $1+i_{t}=\left(1+r^{*}\right) E_{t+1} / E_{t}$, is equal to $r^{*}$. Note that the nominal interest rate in period $T-2$ is also equal to $r^{*}$ because the exchange rate peg is still in place in period $T-1$. Thus, $i_{t}=r^{*}$ for $t=1,2, \ldots, T-2$.

As discussed in section 10.2.5, by pegging the exchange rate the government relinquishes its ability to monetize the deficit. This is because the nominal money supply, $M_{t}$, which in equilibrium equals $E L\left(\bar{C}, r^{*}\right)$, is constant, and as a result seignorage revenue, given by $\left(M_{t}-M_{t-1}\right) / E$, is nil. Consider now the dynamics of foreign reserves. By equation (10.11),

$$
B_{t}^{g}-B_{t-1}^{g}=-D E F ; \quad \text { for } t=1,2, \ldots, T-2 .
$$

This expression shows that the fiscal deficit causes the central bank to lose $D E F$ units of foreign reserves per period. The continuous loss of reserves in combination with the lower bound on the central bank's assets, makes it clear that a currency peg is unsustainable in the presence of persistent fiscal imbalances.

## (3) The post-crisis phase: from $t=T$ onwards

The government starts period $T$ without any foreign reserves $\left(B_{T-1}^{g}=0\right)$. Given our assumptions that the government cannot borrow (that is, $B_{t}^{g}$ cannot be negative) and that it is unable to eliminate the fiscal deficit, it follows that in period $T$ the monetary authority is forced to abandon the currency peg and to print money in order to finance the fiscal deficit. Thus, in the post-crisis phase the government lets the exchange rate float. Consequently, the behavior of all variables of interest is identical to that studied in subsection 10.2.6. In particular, the government will expand the money supply at a constant rate $\mu$ that generates enough seignorage revenue to finance the fiscal deficit. In section 10.2.6, we deduced that $\mu$ is determined by equation (10.15),

$$
D E F=L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))\left(\frac{\mu}{1+\mu}\right)
$$

Note that because the fiscal deficit is positive, the money growth rate must also be positive. In the post-crisis phase, real balances, $M_{t} / E_{t}$ are constant and equal to $L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))$. Therefore, the nominal exchange rate, $E_{t}$, must depreciate at the rate $\mu$. Because in our model $P_{t}=E_{t}$, the price level also grows at the rate $\mu$, that is, the inflation rate is positive and equal to $\mu$.

Finally, the nominal interest rate satisfies $1+i_{t}=\left(1+r^{*}\right)(1+\mu)$. Let's compare the economy's pre- and post-crisis behavior. The first thing to note is that with the demise of the fixed exchange rate regime, price level stability disappears as inflation sets in. In the pre-crisis phase, the rate of monetary expansion, the rate of devaluation, and the rate of inflation are all equal to zero. By contrast, in the post-crisis phase these variables are all positive and equal to $\mu$. Second, the sources of deficit finance are very different in each of the two phases. In the pre-crisis phase, the deficit is financed entirely with foreign reserves. As a result, foreign reserves display a steady decline during this phase. On the other hand, in the post-crisis phase the fiscal deficit is financed through seignorage income and foreign reserves are constant (and in our example equal to zero). Finally, in the post-crisis phase real balances are lower than in the pre-crisis phase because the nominal interest rate is higher.

## (2) The BOP crisis: period $T-1$

In period $T-1$, the exchange rate peg has not yet collapsed. Thus, the nominal exchange rate and the price level are both equal to $E$, that is $E_{T-1}=P_{T-1}=E$. However, the nominal interest rate is not $r^{*}$, as in the pre-crisis phase, because in period $T-1$ the public expects a depreciation of the domestic currency in period $T$. The rate of depreciation of the domestic currency between periods $T-1$ and $T$ is $\mu$, that is, $\left(E_{T}-E_{T-1}\right) / E_{T-1}=\mu .{ }^{8}$ Therefore, the nominal interest rate in period $T-1$ jumps up to its postcrisis level $i_{T-1}=\left(1+r^{*}\right)(1+\mu)-1=i(\mu)$. As a result of the increase in the nominal interest rate real balances fall in $T-1$ to their post-crisis level, that is, $M_{T-1} / E=L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))$. Because the nominal exchange rate does not change in period $T-1$, the decline in real balances must be brought about entirely through a fall in nominal balances: the public runs to the central bank to exchange domestic currency for foreign reserves. Thus, in period $T-1$ foreign reserves at the central bank fall by more than $D E F$. To see this more formally, evaluate the government budget constraint (10.10) at

[^41]Figure 10.4: The dynamics of a balance-of-payments crisis

$t=T-1$ to get

$$
\begin{aligned}
B_{T-1}^{g}-B_{T-2}^{g} & =\frac{M_{T-1}-M_{T-2}}{E}-D E F \\
& =L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))-L\left(\bar{C}, r^{*}\right)-D E F \\
& <-D E F
\end{aligned}
$$

The second equality follows from the fact that $M_{T-1} / E=L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))$ and $M_{T-2} / E=L\left(\bar{C}, r^{*}\right)$. The inequality follows from the fact that $i(\mu)=$ $\left(1+r^{*}\right)(1+\mu)-1>r^{*}$ and the fact that the liquidity preference function is decreasing in the nominal interest rate. The above expression formalizes Krugman's original insight on why the demise of currency pegs is typically preceeded by a speculative run against the domestic currency and large losses of foreign reserves by the central bank: Even though the exchange
rate is pegged in $T-1$, the nominal interest rate rises in anticipation of a devaluation in period $T$ causing a contraction in the demand for real money balances. Because in period $T-1$ the domestic currency is still fully convertible, the central bank must absorb the entire decline in the demand for money by selling foreign reserves. Figure 10.4 closes this section by providing a graphical summary of the dynamics of Krugman-type BOP crises.

### 10.4 Appendix: A dynamic optimizing model of the demand for money

In this section we develop a dynamic optimizing model underlying the liquidity preference function given in equation (10.6). We motivate a demand money by assuming that money facilitates transactions. We capture the fact that money facilitates transactions by simply assuming that agents derive utility not only from consumption of goods but also from holdings of real balances. Specifically, in each period $t=1,2,3, \ldots$ preferences are described by the following single-period utility function,

$$
u\left(C_{t}\right)+z\left(\frac{M_{t}}{P_{t}}\right),
$$

where $C_{t}$ denotes the household's consumption in period $t$ and $M_{t} / P_{t}$ denotes the household's real money holdings in period $t$. The functions $u(\cdot)$ and $z(\cdot)$ are strictly increasing and strictly concave functions $\left(u^{\prime}>0, z^{\prime}>0\right.$, $u^{\prime \prime}<0, z^{\prime \prime}<0$ ).

Households are assumed to be infinitely lived and to care about their entire stream of single-period utilities. However, households discount the future by assigning a greater weight to consumption and real money holdings the closer they are to the present. Specifically, their lifetime utility function is given by

$$
\left[u\left(C_{t}\right)+z\left(\frac{M_{t}}{P_{t}}\right)\right]+\beta\left[u\left(C_{t+1}\right)+z\left(\frac{M_{t+1}}{P_{t+1}}\right)\right]+\beta^{2}\left[u\left(C_{t+2}\right)+z\left(\frac{M_{t+2}}{P_{t+2}}\right)\right]+\ldots
$$

Here $\beta$ is a number greater than zero and less than one called the subjective discount factor." The fact that households care more about the present than about the future is reflected in $\beta$ being less than one.

Let's now analyze the budget constraint of the household. In period $t$, the household allocates its wealth to purchase consumption goods, $P_{t} C_{t}$, to hold money balances, $M_{t}$, to pay taxes, $P_{t} T_{t}$, and to purchase interest
bearing foreign bonds, $E_{t} B_{t}^{p}$. Taxes are lump sum and denominated in domestic currency. The foreign bond is denominated in foreign currency. Each unit of foreign bonds costs 1 unit of the foreign currency, so each unit of the foreign bond costs $E_{t}$ units of domestic currency. Foreign bonds pay the constant world interest rate $r^{*}$ in foreign currency. Note that because the foreign price level is assumed to be constant, $r^{*}$ is not only the interest rate in terms of foreign currency but also the interest rate in terms of goods. That is, $r^{*}$ is the real interest rate. ${ }^{9}$ The superscript $p$ in $B_{t}^{p}$, indicates that these are bond holdings of private households, to distinguish them from the bond holdings of the government, which we will introduce later. In turn, the household's wealth at the beginning of period $t$ is given by the sum of its money holdings carried over from the previous period, $M_{t-1}$, bonds purchased in the previous period plus interest, $E_{t}\left(1+r^{*}\right) B_{t-1}^{p}$, and income from the sale of its endowment of goods, $P_{t} Q_{t}$, where $Q_{t}$ denotes the household's endowment of goods in period $t$. This endowment is assumed to be exogenous, that is, determined outside of the model. The budget constraint of the household in period $t$ is then given by:

$$
\begin{equation*}
P_{t} C_{t}+M_{t}+P_{t} T_{t}+E_{t} B_{t}^{p}=M_{t-1}+\left(1+r^{*}\right) E_{t} B_{t-1}^{p}+P_{t} Q_{t} \tag{10.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

The left hand side of the budget constraint represents the uses of wealth and the right hand side the sources of wealth. The budget constraint is expressed in nominal terms, that is, in terms of units of domestic currency. To express the budget constraint in real terms, that is, in units of goods, we divide both the left and right hand sides of (10.16) by $P_{t}$, which yields

$$
C_{t}+\frac{M_{t}}{P_{t}}+T_{t}+\frac{E_{t}}{P_{t}} B_{t}^{p}=\frac{M_{t-1}}{P_{t-1}} \frac{P_{t-1}}{P_{t}}+\left(1+r^{*}\right) \frac{E_{t}}{P_{t}} B_{t-1}^{p}+Q_{t}
$$

Note that real balances carried over from period $t-1, M_{t-1} / P_{t-1}$, appear multiplied by $P_{t-1} / P_{t}$. In an inflationary environment, $P_{t}$ is greater than $P_{t-1}$, so inflation erodes a fraction of the household's real balances. This loss of resources due to inflation is called the inflation tax. The higher the rate of inflation, the larger the fraction of their income households must allocate to maintaining a certain level of real balances.

Recalling that $P_{t}$ equals $E_{t}$, we can eliminate $P_{t}$ from the utility function

[^42]and the budget constraint to obtain:
\[

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left[u\left(C_{t}\right)+z\left(\frac{M_{t}}{E_{t}}\right)\right]+\beta\left[u\left(C_{t+1}\right)+z\left(\frac{M_{t+1}}{E_{t+1}}\right)\right]+\beta^{2}\left[u\left(C_{t+2}\right)+z\left(\frac{M_{t+2}}{E_{t+2}}\right)\right]+\ldots \tag{10.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

\]

$$
\begin{equation*}
C_{t}+\frac{M_{t}}{E_{t}}+T_{t}+B_{t}^{p}=\frac{M_{t-1}}{E_{t}}+\left(1+r^{*}\right) B_{t-1}^{p}+Q_{t} \tag{10.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

Households choose $C_{t}, M_{t}$, and $B_{t}^{p}$ so as to maximize the utility function (10.17) subject to a series of budget constraints like (10.18), one for each period, taking as given the time paths of $E_{t}, T_{t}$, and $Q_{t}$. In choosing streams of consumption, money balances, and bonds, the households faces two tradeoffs. The first tradeoff is between consuming today and saving today to finance future consumption. The second tradeoff is between consuming today and holding money today.

Consider first the tradeoff between consuming one extra unit of the good today and investing it in international bonds to consume the proceeds tomorrow. If the household chooses to consume the extra unit of goods today, then its utility increases by $u^{\prime}\left(C_{t}\right)$. Alternatively, the household could sell the unit of good for 1 unit of foreign currency and with the proceeds buy 1 unit of the foreign bond. In period $t+1$, the bond pays $1+r^{*}$ units of foreign currency, with which the household can buy $\left(1+r^{*}\right)$ units of goods. This amount of goods increases utility in period $t+1$ by $\left(1+r^{*}\right) u^{\prime}\left(C_{t+1}\right)$. Because households discount future utility at the rate $\beta$, from the point of view of period $t$, lifetime utility increases by $\beta\left(1+r^{*}\right) u^{\prime}\left(C_{t+1}\right)$. If the first alternative yields more utility than the second, the household will increase consumption in period $t$, and lower consumption in period $t+1$. This will tend to eliminate the difference between the two alternatives because it will lower $u^{\prime}\left(C_{t}\right)$ and increase $u^{\prime}\left(C_{t+1}\right)$ (recall that $u(\cdot)$ is concave, so that $u^{\prime}(\cdot)$ is decreasing). On the other hand, if the second alternative yields more utility than the first, the household will increase consumption in period $t+1$ and decrease consumption in period $t$. An optimum occurs at a point where the household cannot increase utility further by shifting consumption across time, that is, at an optimum the household is, in the margin, indifferent between consuming an extra unit of good today or saving it and consuming the proceeds the next period. Formally, the optimal allocation of consumption across time satisfies

$$
\begin{equation*}
u^{\prime}\left(C_{t}\right)=\beta\left(1+r^{*}\right) u^{\prime}\left(C_{t+1}\right) \tag{10.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

We will assume for simplicity that the subjective rate of discount equals
the world interest rate, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\beta\left(1+r^{*}\right)=1 \tag{10.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Combining this equation with the optimality condition (10.19) yields,

$$
\begin{equation*}
u^{\prime}\left(C_{t}\right)=u^{\prime}\left(C_{t+1}\right) \tag{10.21}
\end{equation*}
$$

Because $u(\cdot)$ is strictly concave, $u^{\prime}(\cdot)$ is monotonically decreasing, so this expressions implies that $C_{t}=C_{t+1}$. This relationship must hold in all periods, implying that consumption is constant over time. Let $\bar{C}$ be this optimal level of consumption. Then, we have

$$
C_{t}=C_{t+1}=C_{t+2}=\cdots=\bar{C}
$$

Consider now the tradeoff between spending one unit of money on consumption and holding it for one period. If the household chooses to spend the unit of money on consumption, it can purchase $1 / E_{t}$ units of goods, which yield $u^{\prime}\left(C_{t}\right) / E_{t}$ units of utility. If instead the household chooses to keep the unit of money for one period, then its utility in period $t$ increases by $z^{\prime}\left(M_{t} / E_{t}\right) / E_{t}$. In period $t+1$, the household can use the unit of money to purchase $1 / E_{t+1}$ units of goods, which provide $u^{\prime}\left(C_{t+1}\right) / E_{t+1}$ extra utils. Thus, the alternative of keeping the unit of money for one period yields $z^{\prime}\left(M_{t} / E_{t}\right) / E_{t}+\beta u^{\prime}\left(C_{t+1}\right) / E_{t+1}$ additional units of utility. In an optimum, the household must be indifferent between keeping the extra unit of money for one period and spending it on current consumption, that is,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\frac{z^{\prime}\left(M_{t} / E_{t}\right)}{E_{t}}+\beta \frac{u^{\prime}\left(C_{t+1}\right)}{E_{t+1}}=\frac{u^{\prime}\left(C_{t}\right)}{E_{t}} \tag{10.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the facts that $u^{\prime}\left(C_{t}\right)=u^{\prime}\left(C_{t+1}\right)=u^{\prime}(\bar{C})$ and that $\beta=1 /\left(1+r^{*}\right)$ and rearranging terms we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
z^{\prime}\left(\frac{M_{t}}{E_{t}}\right)=u^{\prime}(\bar{C})\left[1-\frac{E_{t}}{\left(1+r^{*}\right) E_{t+1}}\right] \tag{10.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using the uncovered interest parity condition (10.8) we can write

$$
\begin{equation*}
z^{\prime}\left(\frac{M_{t}}{E_{t}}\right)=u^{\prime}(\bar{C})\left(\frac{i_{t}}{1+i_{t}}\right) \tag{10.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

This equation relates the demand for real money balances, $M_{t} / E_{t}$, to the level of consumption and the domestic nominal interest rate. Inspecting
equation (10.24) and recalling that both $u$ and $z$ are strictly concave, reveals that the demand for real balances, $M_{t} / E_{t}$, is decreasing in the level of the nominal interest rate, $i_{t}$, and increasing in consumption, $\bar{C}$. This relationship is called the liquidity preference function. We write it in a compact form as

$$
\frac{M_{t}}{E_{t}}=L\left(\bar{C}, i_{t}\right)
$$

which is precisely equation (10.6).
The following example derives the liquidity preference function for a particular functional form of the period utility function. Assume that

$$
u\left(C_{t}\right)+z\left(M_{t} / E_{t}\right)=\ln C_{t}+\gamma \ln \left(M_{t} / E_{t}\right) .
$$

Then we have $u^{\prime}(\bar{C})=1 / \bar{C}$ and $z^{\prime}\left(M_{t} / E_{t}\right)=\gamma /\left(M_{t} / E_{t}\right)$. Therefore, equation (10.24) becomes

$$
\frac{\gamma}{M_{t} / E_{t}}=\frac{1}{\bar{C}}\left(\frac{i_{t}}{1+i_{t}}\right)
$$

The liquidity preference function can be found by solving this expression for $M_{t} / E_{t}$. The resulting expression is in fact the liquidity preference function given in equation (10.2.6), which we reproduce here for convenience.

$$
\frac{M_{t}}{E_{t}}=\gamma \bar{C}\left(\frac{i_{t}}{1+i_{t}}\right)^{-1}
$$

In this expression, $M_{t} / E_{t}$ is linear and increasing in consumption and decreasing in $i_{t}$.


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ The seeds for this manuscript were lecture notes taken by Alberto Ramos in a course on International Finance that Mike Woodford taught at the University of Chicago in the Winter of 1994.
    ${ }^{2}$ Columbia University. E-mail: stephanie.schmittgrohe@columbia.edu.
    ${ }^{3}$ Columbia University. E-mail: martin.uribe@columbia.edu.

[^1]:    ${ }^{1}$ How does this transaction affect the Italian balance of payments accounts?

[^2]:    ${ }^{2}$ See Gian Maria Milesi-Ferretti, "A $\$ 2$ Trillion Question," VOX, January 28, 2009, available online at http://www.voxeu.org.

[^3]:    ${ }^{3}$ This constraint on terminal asset holdings is named after Charles K. Ponzi, who introduced pyramid schemes in the 1920s in Massachusetts. To learn more about the remarkable criminal career of Ponzi, visit http://www.mark-knutson.com. A recent example of a Ponzi scheme is given by Bernard Madoff's fraudulent squandering of investments valued around $\$ 50$ billion in 2008.

[^4]:    ${ }^{1}$ That is, $U_{1}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)=\frac{\partial U\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)}{\partial C_{1}}$ and $U_{2}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)=\frac{\partial U\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)}{\partial C_{2}}$. The ratio $\frac{U_{1}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)}{U_{2}\left(C_{1}, C_{2}\right)}$

[^5]:    ${ }^{3}$ Early studies documenting the Great Moderation are Kim and Nelson (1999) and McConell and Perez-Quiróz (2000). Stock and Watson (2002) present a survey of this literarture.

[^6]:    ${ }^{1}$ Equation (3.2) is in fact the first-order necessary condition for profit maximization. To see why, take the derivative of the right-hand side of (3.1) with respect to $K_{2}$ and equate it to zero.

[^7]:    ${ }^{2}$ Strictly speaking, $I_{t}$ is called gross investment and is equal to the sum of net investment, $K_{2}-K_{1}$, which measures the increase in the capital stock, and depreciation, $\delta K_{1}$.

[^8]:    ${ }^{3}$ An implication of assuming that $\delta=1$ is that $I_{1}=K_{2}$. To see this, recall that $K_{2}=(1-\delta) K_{1}+I_{1}$.

[^9]:    ${ }^{4}$ The assumption that $B_{0}^{*}=0$ implies that $C A_{1}=T B_{1}$ and $S_{1}=Q_{1}-C_{1}$. Can you show why?

[^10]:    ${ }^{1}$ In general, the savings schedule also depends (positively) on initial net foreign asset holdings, $B_{0}^{*}$, and net investment income, $r_{0} B_{0}^{*}$. Therefore, strictly speaking, the schedule $S\left(r_{1}, Q_{1}\right)$ embodies the implicit assumption that $B_{0}^{*}=0$.

[^11]:    ${ }^{1}$ See J. Frankel, "US Borrowing from Japan," in Dilip Das, International Finance, Routledge, 1993, chapter 28.

[^12]:    ${ }^{2}$ As noted in chapter 1, domestic absorption is the sum of consumption and investment. However, in the endowment economy under analysis investment is identically equal to zero.

[^13]:    ${ }^{3}$ It is worth noting, however, that if the government levies only lump-sum taxes, as assumed in the present analysis, then the results of this section apply not only to an endowment economy but also to an economy with investment.

[^14]:    ${ }^{4}$ This important insight was first formalized by Robert Barro of Harvard University in "Are Government Bonds Net Wealth," Journal of Political Economy, 1974, volume 82, pages 1095-1117.

[^15]:    ${ }^{1}$ M. Feldstein and C. Horioka, "Domestic Saving and International Capital Flows," Economic Journal 90, June 1980, 314-29.

[^16]:    ${ }^{2}$ The slope and intercept of this line are found by minimizing the sum of the squared distances between the line and each data point. This way of fitting a line through a cloud of points is called Ordinary Least Square estimation, or simply OLS estimation.

[^17]:    ${ }^{3}$ Jeffrey A. Frankel, "Quantifying International Capital Mobility in the 1980s," in D. Das, International Finance, Routledge, 1993.

[^18]:    ${ }^{4}$ For example, if $i$ is 5 percent, then $\ln (1+i)=4.88$, percent.

[^19]:    ${ }^{5}$ See, H. Popper, "International Capital Mobility: direct evidence from long-term currency swaps," IFDP \# 386, Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, September 1990.

[^20]:    ${ }^{1} \mathrm{~A}$ function $f(x, y)$ is homogenous of degree one if $f(x, y)=\lambda f(x / \lambda, y / \lambda)$.

[^21]:    ${ }^{2}$ There are two concepts of labor productivity: average and marginal labor productivity. Average labor productivity is defined as output per worker, $Q / L$. Marginal labor productivity is defined as the increase in output resulting from a unit increase in labor input, holding constant all other inputs. More formally, marginal labor productivity is given by the partial derivative of output with respect to labor, $\partial Q / \partial L$. For the linear technologies given in (7.3) and (7.4), average and marginal labor productivities are the same.

[^22]:    ${ }^{3}$ Canzoneri, Robert E. Cumby, and Behzad Diba, "Relative Labor Productivity and the Real Exchange Rate in the Long Run: Evidence for a Panel of OECD Countries," Journal of International Economics 47, 1999, 245-266.

[^23]:    ${ }^{4}$ How would the imposition of an export subsidy affect the real exchange rate?

[^24]:    ${ }^{1}$ In the Balassa-Samuelson model neither the second nor the third building blocks are needed for the determination of the real exchange rate because in that model the PPF alone determines the real exchange rate.

[^25]:    ${ }^{2}$ Compare these production functions to those of the Balassa-Samuelson model. In the Balassa-Samuelson model, the production functions are $F_{T}\left(L_{T}\right)=a_{T} L_{T}$ and $F_{N}\left(L_{N}\right)=$ $a_{N} L_{N}$. Thus, in that model $F_{T}^{\prime}=a_{T}>0$ and $F_{N}^{\prime}=a_{N}>0$, which means that the marginal product of labor is constant in both sectors, or, equivalently, that $F_{T}^{\prime \prime}=F_{N}^{\prime \prime}=0$.

[^26]:    ${ }^{3}$ Note that here we use the term "real exchange rate" to refer to the relative price of tradables in terms of nontradables, $P_{T} / P_{N}$.

[^27]:    ${ }^{4}$ The interest rate in terms of tradables indicates how many units of tradables one receives next periods for each unit of tradables invested today. On the other hand, the interest rate in terms of nontradables represents the amount of nontradables one receives tomor-

[^28]:    row per unit of nontradables invested today, and is given by $\left(1+r_{1}\right)\left(P_{N 1} / P_{T 1}\right) /\left(P_{N 2} / P_{T 2}\right)$. To see why this is so, note that 1 unit of nonntradables in period 1 buys $P_{N 1} / P_{T 1}$ units of tradables in period 1 , which can be invested at the rate $r_{1}$ to get $\left(1+r_{1}\right) P_{N 1} / P_{T 1}$ units of tradables in period 2. In turn each unit of tradables in period 2 can be exchanged for $P_{T 2} / P_{N 2}$ units of nontradables in that period.

[^29]:    ${ }^{5}$ Note that equations (8.12) and (8.13) do not introduce any additional unknowns.

[^30]:    ${ }^{6}$ G. Calvo, L. Leiderman, and C. Reinhart, "Capital Inflows and Real Exchange Rate Appreciation in Latin America: The Role of External Factors," International Monetary Fund Staff Papers, Vol. 40, March 1993, 108-151.

[^31]:    ${ }^{1}$ See G. Calvo, L. Leiderman, and C. Reinhart, "Inflows of Capital to Developing Countries in the 1990s," Journal of Economic Perspectives, 10, Spring 1996, 123-139.

[^32]:    ${ }^{2}$ To see that point A' represents GDP in terms of tradables, note that the line connecting A and $\mathrm{A}^{\prime}$ has slope $-P_{T}^{A} / P_{N}^{A}$ and crosses the point $\left(Q_{T}^{A}, Q_{N}^{A}\right)$; thus such line can be written as the pairs $(x, y)$ satisfying $y=Q_{N}^{A}-\frac{P_{T}^{A}}{P_{N}^{A}}\left(x-Q_{T}^{A}\right)$. We are looking for the intersection of this line with the $x$ axis, that is, for the value of $x$ corresponding to $y=0$. Setting $y=0$ we get $x=Q_{T}^{A}+\left(P_{N}^{A} / P_{T}^{A}\right) Q_{N}^{A}$.

[^33]:    ${ }^{3}$ The analysis that follows draws heavily from a lucid article by Paul Krugman, of Princeton University, entitled "Reducing Developing Country Debt," in Currencies and Crises, Paul Krugman (Ed.), Cambridge MA: MIT Press, 1995.

[^34]:    ${ }^{4}$ For more information on ongoing efforts to reduce the debt burden of HIPCs see the web site of the Center for International Development at Harvard University (http://www. cid.harvard.edu/cidhipc/hipchome.htm).

[^35]:    ${ }^{1}$ Here two comments are in order. First, in chapter 6, we argued that free capital mobility implies that covered interest rate parity holds. The difference between covered and uncovered interest rate parity is that covered interest rate parity uses the forward exchange rate $F_{t}$ to eliminate foreign exchange rate risk, whereas uncovered interest rate parity uses the expected future spot exchange rate, $E_{t+1}^{e}$. In general, $F_{t}$ and $E_{t+1}^{e}$ are not equal to each other. However, under certainty $F_{t}=E_{t+1}^{e}=E_{t+1}$, so covered and uncovered interest parity are equivalent. Second, in chapter 6 we further argued that free capital mobility implies that covered interest parity must hold for nominal interest rates. However, in equation (10.7) we used the world real interest rate $r^{*}$. In the context of

[^36]:    our model this is okay because we are assuming that the foreign price level is constant ( $P^{*}=1$ ) so that, by the Fisher equation (6.3), the nominal world interest rate must be equal to the real world interest rate $\left(i_{t}^{*}=r_{t}^{*}\right)$.
    ${ }^{2}$ Note that the notation here is different from the one used in chapter 5, where $B_{t}^{g}$ denoted the level of government debt.

[^37]:    ${ }^{3}$ Strictly speaking, the model predicts that all points in both figures should lie on a straight line, which is clearly not the case. The reason for this discrepancy may be that the model abstracts from a number of real world factors that affect the relationship between money growth, inflation, and depreciation. For example, in the model we assume that there is no domestic growth, that all goods are traded, that PPP holds, and that foreign inflation is constant.

[^38]:    ${ }^{4}$ A fascinating account of four Post World War I European hyperinflations is given in Sargent, "The End of Four Big Inflations," in Robert Hall, editor, Inflation: Causes and Effects, The University of Chicago Press, Chicago, 1982.

[^39]:    ${ }^{5}$ Those familiar with the appendix will recognize that the constancy of consumption is a direct implication of our assumption that the subjective discount rate is equal to the world interest rate, that is, $\beta\left(1+r^{*}\right)=1$. It is clear from (10.19) that consumption will grow over time only if $\beta\left(1+r^{*}\right)$ is greater than 1 .
    ${ }^{6}$ Can you show that this form of the liquidity preference function obtains when the period utility function is given by $\ln C_{t}+\theta \ln \left(M_{t} / E_{t}\right)$. Under this particular preference specification find the growth rate of consumption $\gamma$ as a function of $\beta$ and $1+r^{*}$.

[^40]:    ${ }^{7}$ The model appeared in Paul R. Krugman, "A Model of Balance-of-Payments Crisis," Journal of Money, Credit and Banking, 11, 1979, 311-325.

[^41]:    ${ }^{8}$ For technically inclined readers: To see that $\left(E_{T}-E_{T-1}\right) / E_{T-1}=\mu$, use the fact that in $T-1$ real balances are given by $M_{T-1} / E_{T-1}=L\left(\bar{C},\left(1+r^{*}\right) E_{T} / E_{T-1}-1\right)$ and that in period $T$ the government budget constraint is $D E F=L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))$ -$\left(M_{T-1} / E_{T-1}\right)\left(E_{T-1} / E_{T}\right)$. These are two equations in two unknowns, $M_{T-1} / E_{T-1}$ and $E_{T} / E_{T-1}$. If we set $E_{T} / E_{T-1}=1+\mu$, then the two equations collapse to (10.15) indicating that $E_{T} / E_{T-1}=1+\mu$ and $M_{T-1} / E_{T-1}=L(\bar{C}, i(\mu))$ are indeed the solution.

[^42]:    ${ }^{9}$ The domestic nominal and real interest rates will in general not be equal to each other unless domestic inflation is zero. To see this, recall the Fisher equation (6.3). We will return to this point shortly.

